

# Index

## **ABANDONMENT**

Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A, **6:90**  
Reorganization with court or agency approval under Section 3(a)(10), **3:9, 3:40, 3:41**

## **ABA TASK FORCE GUIDELINES**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:113**

## **A/B EXCHANGE OFFERS**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:259**

## **ABSOLUTE UNWORTHINESS**

Mini-registration, Regulation A, six exclusions, **6:9**

## **ABUSES IN REGULATION A OFFERINGS**

Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A, **6:15**

## **ACCESS OFFEREES**

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:79, 11:80**

## **ACCOUNTANTS**

Liable persons, Section 12(a)(2), **16:90**

## **ACCOUNTS**

Crowdfunding, intermediary requirements, opening, **15:19**  
Private resales, Rule 144A, **10A:27**  
Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:19, 10:209**

## **ACCREDITED INVESTORS**

**Limited Offering Exemptions, Regulation D** (this index)  
**Nonpublic Offerings** (this index)  
**Offerings to Accredited Investors, Section 4(a)(5)** (this index)

## **ACCREDITED NATURAL PERSONS**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, proposed Rule 509, **7:77**

## **ACKNOWLEDGMENT**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:98**  
Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:104**

## **ADMINISTRATIVE LAW**

Brokers' special exemption, Section 4(a)(4), **13:23**  
Dealers' exemption, Section 4(a)(3), **12:12**

## **ADMINISTRATIVE LAW—Cont'd**

**Mini-Registration Under Section 3(b), Regulation A** (this index)  
Private resales, Rule 144A, **10A:47, 10A:47.10, 10A:47.20**  
Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), **2:55 to 2:58**  
Rescinded Rule 235 § 3(b), **1:48**  
Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:116**  
**Sanctions** (this index)  
SEC administrative law judge proceedings, constitutional challenges, **16:7**

## **ADMINISTRATIVE LAW JUDGE**

SEC administrative law judge proceedings, constitutional challenges, **16:7**

## **ADVERTISING AND ADVERTISEMENTS**

Crowdfunding, issuer requirements, **15:12**  
Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:140 to 7:143, 7:150**  
Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:131, 11:131.25, 11:136 to 11:139, 11:146**

## **ADVICE AND ADVISERS**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:202**  
Section 3(b) and 3(c), **8:24**

## **AFFILIATES AND NONAFFILIATES**

**Brokers' Special Exemption, Section 4(a)(4)** (this index)  
Intrastate offerings under Section 3(a)(11), **4:18, 4:19**

**Limited Offering Exemptions, Regulation D** (this index)

**Mini-Registration Under Section 3(b), Regulation A** (this index)

**Recapitalizations** (this index)

Registration, **1:9, 1:10**

Reorganization with court or agency approval under Section 3(a)(10), **3:45, 3:46, 3:57, 3:58**

Rescinded Rule 144(k), non-affiliate sellers, **1:90**

**Rescinded Rule 237 § 3(b)** (this index)

**Restricted and Controlled Securities** (this index)

**Routine Trading Under Section 4(a)(1)** (this index)

Security futures products and standardized options, **5A:10**

**Seller** (this index)

**AFFIRMATIVE DEFENSES**

Section 12(a)(1), **16:61 to 16:64**  
 Section 12(a)(2), **16:117 to 16:120**

**AGENTS AND AGENCY**

**Brokers' Special Exemption, Section 4(a)(4)**  
 (this index)  
 Clearing agencies, security futures products and  
 standardized options, **5A:11**  
 Intrastate offerings under Section 3(a)(11), **4:17**  
 Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D,  
**7:158, 7:285, App 7L**  
 Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:153**  
 Registration, **App 7L**  
**Reorganization** (this index)  
 Rule list and webpage tracking SEC rulemaking,  
**App 1B**

**AGGREGATE OFFERING PRICE**

**Limited Offering Exemptions, Regulation D**  
 (this index)  
 Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation  
**A, 6:38 to 6:40, 6:41 to 6:44**  
 Rescinded Rule 242 § 3(b), **1:68**

**AGGREGATE SALES PRICE**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:6, 7:13**  
 Rescinded Rule 240 § 3(b), **1:61**  
**Section 3(b) and 3(c)** (this index)

**AGGREGATION**

**Restricted and Controlled Securities** (this  
 index)

**AGREEMENTS**

**Contracts and Agreements** (this index)  
**Whistleblower Program** (this index)

**AIRCRAFT EQUIPMENT**

Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:8**

**ALLEGATIONS**

Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation  
**A, 6:108**  
 Section 12(a)(2), refuting buyer's allegation,  
**16:110**

**ALL OR NONE OFFERINGS**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:47**

**ALL PLACEMENTS**

Private resales, Rule 144A, **10A:51**

**AMBIGUOUS TERM**

Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:67**

**AMENDMENTS**

**Changes, Modifications, and Amendments** (this  
 index)

**AMOUNTS**

Accredited investors, **14:2**  
 Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D,  
**7:289**  
**Mini-Registration Under Section 3(b), Regulation A** (this index)  
**Private Resales, Rule 144A** (this index)  
 Rescinded Rule 237 § 3(b), **1:54**  
 Rescission offers, **16:25**  
**Restricted and Controlled Securities** (this  
 index)  
**Section 3(b) and 3(c)** (this index)

**ANNOUNCEMENTS**

Section 3(b) and 3(c), **8:12**

**ANTISOLICITATION REQUIREMENT**

**Brokers' Special Exemption, Section 4(a)(4)**  
 (this index)

**ANY SECURITY**

Reorganization with court or agency approval  
 under Section 3(a)(10), **3:6, 3:37, 3:59**

**APPEAL AND REVIEW**

See also **Judicial Review** (this index)  
 Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D,  
**7:114**

**Nonpublic Offerings** (this index)

Reorganization with court or agency approval  
 under Section 3(a)(10), **3:55, 3:64**

SEC v. Ralston Purina Co., **11:23**

**APPROPRIATE LEGENDS**

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:160**

**APPROXIMATE NET WORTH**

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:71**

**ARBITRATION**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities,  
 Rule 144, **10:112**  
 Section 12(a)(2), **16:73**  
 Seller's response to violations, **16:32, 16:33**

**ASSESSMENT**

Private resales, Rule 144A, **10A:58**  
**Routine Trading Under Section 4(a)(1)** (this  
 index)  
 Section 3(b) and 3(c), **8:38**

**ASSETS**

Intrastate offerings under Section 3(a)(11), **4:36**  
 Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:67**  
 Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:91**  
 Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), **2:35**  
 Section 3(b) and 3(c), **8:32**

**ASSIGNMENT**

**Real Estate Mortgage Securities, Section 4(5)**  
 (this index)

## ASSOCIATES

Mini-Registration Under Section 3(b), Regulation A (this index)  
Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:41**

## ASSUMPTION OF OBLIGATIONS

Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A, **6:36**  
Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), **2:30, 2:31, 2:36**  
Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:130**

## AT THE MARKET

Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A, **6:39**

## ATTORNEYS

Liable persons, Section 12(a)(2), **16:89**  
Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:72**  
Reorganization with court or agency approval under Section 3(a)(10), **3:17**

## ATTORNEY'S FEES

Section 12(a)(1), **16:60**

## ATTRIBUTION

Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:189 to 10:192**

## BAD FAITH

Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:27**

## BANKRUPTCY

Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), **2:50**  
**Reorganization** (this index)  
**Rescinded Rule 148** (this index)  
**Restricted and Controlled Securities** (this index)  
Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:108**

## BANKS AND BANKING

**Holding Company** (this index)  
Liable persons, Section 12(a)(2), **16:91**  
Private resales, Rule 144A, **10A:38, 10A:39**  
Reorganization. **Holding Company** (this index)  
Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:28, 9:40**  
Savings association. Reorganization of bank or savings association into holding company under Section 3(a)(12), above  
Section 3(a)(12). Reorganization of bank or savings association into holding company under Section 3(a)(12), above

## BEAR RISKS, ABILITY TO

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:77**

## BENEFICIAL INTERESTS

Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:46, 10:99**

## BENEFICIAL OWNERS

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:8, 7:276**  
Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:193**  
Rescinded Rule 240 § 3(b), **1:62**

## BENEFICIARIES

**Restricted and Controlled Securities** (this index)

## BENEFIT PLAN

**Employee Benefit Plan** (this index)

## BESPEAKS CAUTION DOCTRINE

Material misstatement, Section 12(a)(2), **16:106, 16:107**

## BLANK CHECK COMPANIES

Limited offering exemptions, **7:181**

## BLOCK POSITIONER

Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:221**

## BONA FIDE INTENT

Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:237**

## BONA FIDE PLEDGE

Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:146, 10:147**

## BONDS

Real estate mortgage securities, Section 4(5), **1:104**

## BONUS SECURITIES

Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A, **6:34**  
Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:31**

## BRIEFS

Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:117**

## BROKER

Private resales, Rule 144A, **10A:13, 10A:14**  
Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:36.10, 10:217, 10:218, 10:225, 10:229**

## BROKERAGE COMMISSIONS

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:7**

## BROKER-DEALER

**Dealers' Exemption, Section 4(a)(3)** (this index)  
Liable persons, Section 12(a)(2), **16:85**  
Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:285, App 7L**  
Private resales, Rule 144A, **10A:35 to 10A:37**  
**Registration, 1:11, App 7L**  
Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:16**

**BROKER-DEALER—Cont'd**

Seller exemptions, **1:36**  
 Solicitation of customer's orders, Rule 144(g)(2),  
**13:30 to 13:32**

**BROKERS' SPECIAL EXEMPTION, SECTION 4(A)(4)**  
 Generally, **13:1 et seq.**  
 Administrative expenses, **13:23**  
 Affiliates and nonaffiliates  
   Generally, **13:4 to 13:11**  
   Interpretation, **13:8**  
   1933-1945, **13:7**  
   Nonaffiliates, broker for, **13:4**  
   Potential underwriters, **13:6**  
   In re Ira Haupt & Co., **13:8**  
   Restricted securities, **13:11**  
   Rule 144, **13:10**  
   Rule 154, search for certainty, **13:9**  
 Agent. Broker-dealer as agent, Rule 144(g)(1),  
   below  
 Antisolicitation requirement, exceptions to. Solicitation of customer's orders, Rule 144(g)(2),  
   below  
 Availability of Rule 144(g), interrelationship between Section 4(a)(4) and Rule 144(g),  
**13:13**  
 Broker-dealer as agent, Rule 144(g)(1)  
   Generally, **13:15 to 13:20**  
   Customer, broker-dealer as both agent and,  
**13:17**  
   Functioning as agent, **13:16**  
   Issuer of securities to be sold, agent controlled by, **13:18**  
   Market-maker, **13:20**  
   Seller, broker-dealer in control of, **13:19**  
 Buy orders, **13:26**  
 Care, duty of, Rule 144(g)(3), **13:39**  
 Commission of broker, Rule 144(g)(1), **13:21 to 13:23**  
 Control, **13:18, 13:19, 13:31**  
 Customary broker's commission, **13:22**  
 Customers  
   Broker-dealer as both agent and customer,  
**13:17**  
   Definition, **13:28**  
   Inquiries, **13:36, 13:37**  
   Solicitation of customer's orders, Rule 144(g)(2), below  
 Definitions, **13:28**  
 Exchange, orders executed on, **13:40**  
 Execution of orders, **13:40**  
 Expenses, administrative, **13:23**  
 In re Ira Haupt & Co., **13:8**  
 Inquiries, **13:35 to 13:38**  
 Interdealer quotation system, **13:38**

**BROKERS' SPECIAL EXEMPTION,**

**SECTION 4(A)(4)—Cont'd**  
 Interpretations, **13:8, 13:25**  
 Issuer, **13:18, 13:31**  
 Limitations and restrictions, **13:11**  
 Market, orders executed on exchange or in over-the-counter market, **13:40**  
 Market-maker, **13:20, 13:32**  
 1933-1945, **13:7**  
 Orders  
   Executed on exchange or in over-the-counter market, **13:40**  
   Solicitation of customer's orders, Rule 144(g)(2), below  
 Over-the-counter market, **13:40**  
 Pre-Rule 144 interpretations, **13:25**  
 Purchaser, nature of, **13:33**  
 Records and recordings, **13:37**  
 Restricted securities, **13:11**  
 Rule 144, **13:10**  
 Rule 144(g), interrelationship between Section 4(a)(4) and, **13:12 to 13:14**  
 Rule 144(g)(1). Broker-dealer as agent, Rule 144(g)(1), above  
 Rule 144(g)(2). Solicitation of customer's orders, Rule 144(g)(2), below  
 Rule 144(g)(3), **13:39**  
 Rule 154, search for certainty, **13:9**  
 Seller, broker-dealer in control of, **13:19**  
 Solicitation of customer's orders, Rule 144(g)(2)  
   Generally, **13:24 to 13:38**  
   Antisolicitation requirement, exceptions to  
     Generally, **13:34 to 13:38**  
     Inquiries, **13:35 to 13:38**  
     Written records, **13:37**  
   Broker-dealer, nature of, **13:30 to 13:32**  
   Buy orders, **13:26**  
     "Customers" defined, **13:28**  
   Exceptions. Antisolicitation requirement, exceptions to, above this group  
   Issuer of securities to be sold, broker controlled by, **13:31**  
   Market-makers, **13:32**  
   Nature of orders, **13:27 to 13:29**  
   Pre-Rule 144 interpretations, **13:25**  
   Purchaser, nature of, **13:33**  
 Underwriters, potential, **13:6**  
 Usual and customary broker's commission, **13:22**  
 Written records, **13:37**

**BURDEN OF PROOF**

Generally, **1:18**  
 Nonpublic Offerings (this index)

**BUSCH v. CARPENTER**

Intrastate offerings under Section 3(a)(11), **4:54**

**BUSINESS ADVISOR**

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:72**

**BUSINESS ASSOCIATION**

Intrastate offerings under Section 3(a)(11), **4:42**

**BUSINESS COMBINATION**

**Cross-Border Rights Offerings, Exchange Offers and Business Combinations** (this index)

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:83, 7:131, 7:194, 7:222**

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:124, 11:187, 11:188**

**Routine Trading Under Section 4(a)(1)** (this index)

**BUSINESS DEVELOPMENT COMPANIES**

Definitions, **7:57 et seq.**

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:88**

**BUSINESS ENTITIES**

Intrastate offerings under Section 3(a)(11), **4:46**

**BUSINESS EXPERIENCE**

Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A, **6:61**

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:67**

**BUSINESS ORGANIZATIONS**

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:39, 11:40**

**BUSINESS RELATIONSHIP**

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:143 to 11:145**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:210**

**BUYER**

**Purchaser** (this index)

**BUY ORDERS**

Brokers' special exemption, Section 4(a)(4), **13:26**

**“BY MEANS OF”**

Violations, Section 12(a)(2), **16:97, 16:98**

**CALCULATION**

Employee benefit plans and compensation contracts, Rule 701, **8:30**

**Limited Offering Exemptions, Regulation D** (this index)

Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A, **6:22, 6:41 to 6:44**

**Nonpublic Offerings** (this index)

Private resales, Rule 144A, **10A:29**

**Restricted and Controlled Securities** (this index)

**CALL OPTIONS**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:30, 10:185, 10:224**

Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:33**

Security futures products and standardized options, **5A:9**

**CANCELLATION**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:120**

**CAPITAL**

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:181**

Private resales, Rule 144A, **10A:12**

**CAPITALIZATION**

Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A, **6:66, 6:67**

**CAPITAL RAISING**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:221**

Seller exemptions, **1:29**

**CARE, DUTY OF**

Brokers' special exemption, Section 4(a)(4), **13:39**

**CASE LAW**

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:29**

Violations, Section 12(a)(2), **16:116**

**CASH FORWARD CONTRACTS**

Security futures products and standardized options, **5A:2**

**CASHLESS EXERCISE OF OPTIONS AND WARRANTS**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:167.50**

**CASH OFFERING**

Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A, **6:43**

**CASH OR MONEY**

**Limited Offering Exemptions, Regulation D** (this index)

Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A, **6:42**

Reorganization with court or agency approval under Section 3(a)(10), **3:8, 3:39, 3:61**

**CASH-SETTLED OPTION**

Security futures products and standardized options, **5A:9**

**CAUSATION**

Violations, Section 12(a)(2), **16:120**

**CEILING**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:198**

**CERTIFICATES AND CERTIFICATION**

Intrastate offerings under Section 3(a)(11), **4:63**  
 Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:93, 7:94**  
 Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A, **6:83**  
 Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:4, 9:6 to 9:9**  
 Section 3(b) and 3(c), **8:1 to 8:3**

**CHALLENGES**

Constitutional, SEC administrative law judge proceedings, **16:7**  
**Limited Offering Exemptions, Regulation D** (this index)  
 Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A, **6:108**

**CHANGES, MODIFICATIONS, AND AMENDMENTS**

Dealers' exemption, Section 4(a)(3), **12:6**  
 Extraterritorial application of registration requirements, Regulation S, **15A:2 to 15A:4, 15A:40**  
 Federal Securities Laws, **5A:4**  
**Limited Offering Exemptions, Regulation D** (this index)  
 Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A, **6:33, 6:78 to 6:81, 6:89, 6:109**  
 Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), **2:18, 2:27**  
 Reorganization with court or agency approval under Section 3(a)(10), **3:69**  
**Restricted and Controlled Securities** (this index)  
 Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:25**  
 Security futures products and standardized options, 1933 and 1934 Acts, **5A:3**  
 Statutory sections, **1:3**

**CHAPMAN v. DUNN**

Intrastate offerings under Section 3(a)(11), **4:23**

**CHARTER AMENDMENT**

Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), **2:18**

**CHARTS**

Limited offering exemptions. See **Limited Offering Exemptions, Regulation D** (this index)

**CHICAGO BOARD OPTIONS EXCHANGE**

**Security Futures Products and Standardized Options** (this index)

**CHINESE CONSOLIDATED BENEVOLENT ASSOCIATION, SEC VERSUS**

Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:39, 9:52**

**CIRCULAR**

**Mini-Registration Under Section 3(b), Regulation A** (this index)

**CITIZENSHIP**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:89**  
 Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:52**

**CIVIL LIABILITIES**

**Violations** (this index)

**CLIMATE CHANGE**

SEC final rules, risk disclosures (2025), **1:6**

**CLOSED END COMPANY**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:59**

**CLOSELY HELD ISSUERS**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D—charts, **App 7G**  
**Rescinded Rule 240 § 3(b)** (this index)

**CLOSE PERSONAL FRIENDS**

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:81**

**COINCIDENT OFFERS AND SALES**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:48**

**CO-ISSUERS**

Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:67, 9:68**

**COLLATERALIZED MORTGAGE OBLIGATIONS (CMOS)**

Generally, **1:106**

**COMBINATIONS**

Reorganization with court or agency approval under Section 3(a)(10), **3:93 to 3:95**

**COMBINED SECURITIES OWNERSHIP AND NET WORTH TEST**

Private resales, Rule 144A, **10A:39**

**COMMENT LETTERS**

SEC, exempted transactions, **1:2**

**COMMISSIONS**

Brokers' special exemption, Section 4(a)(4), **13:21 to 13:23**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:7, 7:292**

Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A, **6:17**

**Recapitalizations** (this index)

**COMMITTEE CERTIFICATES**

Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:4**

**COMMODITIES FORWARD CONTRACTS**

Security futures products and standardized options, **5A:2**

**COMMODITIES FUTURES CONTRACTS**

Security futures products and standardized options, **5A:2**

**COMMODITY FUTURES MODERNIZATION ACT (2002)**  
**Security Futures Products and Standardized Options** (this index)

**COMMODITY FUTURES TRADING COMMISSION**  
**Security Futures Products and Standardized Options** (this index)

**COMMON CONTROL**  
Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:80**

**COMMUNICATION**  
**Limited Offering Exemptions, Regulation D** (this index)  
Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A, **6:86, 6:91**  
**Nonpublic Offerings** (this index)

**COMPANION PROVISIONS TO TACKING SUBSECTIONS**  
**Restricted and Controlled Securities** (this index)

**COMPENSATION**  
**Commissions** (this index)  
Crowdfunding, issuer requirements, **15:13**  
Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A, **6:34**  
Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:59 to 10:61**  
**Section 3(b) and 3(c)** (this index)

**COMPENSATION SECURITIES**  
Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:60**  
Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:84**

**COMPENSATORY ARRANGEMENTS**  
Section 3(b) and 3(c), **8:21**

**COMPLAINTS**  
Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:242**

**COMPLETED OFFERINGS**  
Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:309 to 7:311**

**COMPUTATION**  
**Calculation** (this index)

**CONCERT, PERSONS ACTING IN**  
**Restricted and Controlled Securities** (this index)

**CONDITIONING OF MARKET**  
Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:157**  
Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:152**

**CONDITIONS**  
**Extraterritorial Application of Registration Requirements, Regulation S** (this index)  
**Limited Offering Exemptions, Regulation D** (this index)  
Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:57**  
Private resales, Rule 144A, general solicitation, **10A:7**  
Rescinded Regulation B, exemptions, **1:128**  
Rescinded Regulation F, exemptions, **1:131**  
Rescinded Rule 237 § 3(b), **1:50**  
Rescinded Rule 240 § 3(b), **1:58**  
Rescinded Rule 242 § 3(b), **1:66**  
Rescinded Rule 505, exemptions, **1:134**  
Security futures products and standardized options, **5A:10**

**CONDITIONS NOT MET**  
Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A, **6:100**

**CONDITIONS TO BE MET**  
Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:76**

**CONFIDENTIALITY AGREEMENTS**  
Whistleblower program, violations, **16:122**

**CONSIDERATION**  
Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:81, 7:82**  
Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), **2:51**  
Violations, Section 12(a)(1), **16:57**

**CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**  
Private resales, Rule 144A, **10A:32**

**CONSTITUTIONAL CHALLENGES**  
SEC administrative law judge proceedings, **16:7**

**CONSTRUCTION AND INTERPRETATION**  
Brokers' special exemption, Section 4(a)(4), **13:8, 13:25**  
Dealers' exemption, Section 4(a)(3), **12:12**  
Intrastate offerings under Section 3(a)(11), **4:26, 4:27, 4:66**  
Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:143, 7:227**  
Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:11, 11:12, 11:106, 11:139**  
Private resales, Rule 144A, **10A:47, 10A:47.10, 10A:47.20**  
Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), **2:55 to 2:58**  
Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:199**  
Rescinded Rule 235 § 3(b), **1:48**  
**Routine Trading Under Section 4(a)(1)** (this index)  
Violations, judicial interpretation, **16:64, 16:98**

**CONSULTANTS**Section 3(b) and 3(c), **8:24****CONTEMPORANEOUS ACTS AND MATTERS**Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A, **6:43**Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:30, 11:34**Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:91****CONTINGENT STOCK**Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:144****CONTRACTS AND AGREEMENTS**Intrastate offerings under Section 3(a)(11), **4:56, 4:57****Real Estate Mortgage Securities, Section 4(5)** (this index)Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), **2:6, 2:16 to 2:19****Restricted and Controlled Securities** (this index)**Section 3(b) and 3(c)** (this index)SPAC subscription agreements, rule 506, **4:56****CONTRADICTORY ORAL REPRESENTATIONS**Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:203****CONTROL****Restricted and Controlled Securities** (this index)**CONVERSIONS****Restricted and Controlled Securities** (this index)**CONVERTIBLE SECURITIES**Private resales, Rule 144A, **10A:23**Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:141, 10:194**Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:32****COOPERATIVE HOUSING CORPORATIONS****Rescinded Rule 235 § 3(b)** (this index)**COORDINATED EXEMPTIONS****Section 3(b) and 3(c)** (this index)**CORPORATIONS**Intrastate offerings under Section 3(a)(11), **4:42**Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D Generally, **7:310**Charts, businesses in organizational stage, App **7E****Parent and Subsidiary Corporations** (this index)Real estate mortgage securities, Section 4(5), **1:99****CORPORATIONS—Cont'd****Restricted and Controlled Securities** (this index)**CORRECTIONS**Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), **2:11****COST**Private resales, Rule 144A, **10A:31****COURT APPROVAL****Reorganization** (this index)**COVENANTS****Representations and Covenants** (this index)**COVER PAGE**Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A, **6:52****COVID-19 PANDEMIC**Temporary relief for small issuers, crowdfunding, **15:33****CREDIT ARRANGEMENTS**Private resales, Rule 144A, **10A:13, 10A:14****CRIMINAL LAW**Sanctions, **16:12****CROSS-BORDER RIGHTS OFFERINGS, EXCHANGE OFFERS AND BUSINESS COMBINATIONS**Definitions: Rule 800, **8:45**Domestic issuers, **8:64**

Exchange offer or business combination, offerings in connection with

Generally, **8:53 to 8:64**“Business combination,” **8:54**Conditions, **8:56**“Exchange offer,” **8:54**Internet use, **8:60, 8:61**Legends, **8:57**Offshore tender and exchange offers, rights offerings and business combinations, **8:62**Presumption for certain offers, **8:58**Status of securities acquired in transaction, **8:59**Exemptions, generally, **8:43 to 8:64**Foreign private issuer, home jurisdiction, **8:46**General notes to Rules 800, 801, 802, **8:44**Offshore tender and exchange offers, rights offerings and business combinations, **8:62**

Rights offerings

Generally, **8:48 to 8:64**Conditions, **8:50**Internet use, **8:60, 8:61**Legends, **8:51**Offshore tender and exchange offers, rights offerings and business combinations, **8:62**

## CROSS-BORDER RIGHTS OFFERINGS, EXCHANGE OFFERS AND BUSINESS COMBINATIONS—Cont'd

- Rights offerings—Cont'd
  - “Rights offering,” **8:49**
  - Status of securities acquired in transaction, **8:52**
  - U.S. exempt component, **8:63**
  - U.S. holder, **8:47**

## CROSS-BORDER TRANSACTIONS

- Security swap, **5A:13**

## CROWDFUNDING

- 2022 SEC investor guide to regulation, **15:6**
- Generally, **15:1 to 15:33**
  - Accounts and accounting, intermediary requirements, opening, **15:19**
  - Advertisements, issuer requirements, **15:12**
  - Associated persons, intermediary requirements, **15:16**
  - Background, **15:1**
  - Cancellation of offerings, intermediary requirements, **15:21**
  - Compensation and salaries, issuer requirements, **15:13**
  - Completion of offerings, intermediary requirements, **15:21**
  - Compliance, funding portals, **15:27**
  - Covid-19 Pandemic, temporary relief for small issuers, **15:33**
  - Definitions, intermediary requirements, **15:16**
  - Disqualification events, **15:32**
  - Exclusions, Rule 100, **15:3**
  - Exemptions, funding portals, registration, **15:25**
  - Form C, filing requirements, issuer requirements, **15:11**
  - Fraud, intermediary requirements, reduction, **15:18**
  - Frequently asked questions about regulation, SEC, **15:5**
  - Funding portals, **15:23 to 15:28**
    - Intermediary requirements, **15:16**
  - General requirements, intermediary requirements, **15:17**
  - Insignificant deviations, **15:31**
  - Intermediary requirements, **15:15 to 15:22**
  - Introduction
    - Funding portals, **15:23**
    - Intermediary requirements, **15:15**
    - Miscellaneous provisions, **15:29**
  - Issuer requirements, **15:7 to 15:14**
    - Disclosure, **15:8**
    - Ongoing reporting requirements, **15:10**
    - Requirements under Regulation S-K, **15:9**
  - Limitations, Rule 100, **15:3**
  - Miscellaneous provisions, **15:29 to 15:33**

## CROWDFUNDING—Cont'd

- Overview, rules and regulations, **15:2**
- Payments, third parties, intermediary requirements, **15:22**
- Reconfirmations of offerings, intermediary requirements, **15:21**
- Records, funding portals, **15:28**
- Registration, funding portals, **15:24**
- Exemptions, **15:25**
- Reporting requirements, issuer requirements, **15:7**
- Restrictions on resale, **15:30**
- Safe harbor, funding portals, **15:26**
- SEC compliance and disclosure interpretations for regulation, **15:4**
- Study of use, **App 1L**
- Transactions, intermediary requirements, **15:20**

## CRYPTOCURRENCY

- 2025 presidential executive orders implementing de-regulation program, **App 1H**
- Bitcoin Reserve, **1:5**
- Crypto lending, SEC enforcement, **16:130**
- Cybersecurity and Infrastructure Security Agency Act of 2018, **16:125**
- Definitions, **16:124**
- July 31, 2025 SEC Chair Speech on New regulatory regime for cryptocurrency, **App 1D**
- Non-fungible tokens (NFTs), **16:128**
- Offerings and registrations of securities in the crypto asset markets, **App 1J**
- SEC enforcement policy, **16:124**
- SEC list of cryptocurrency enforcement actions, **16:126**
- Stablecoins, **16:127**
- State UCC, **16:124**
- Trading platforms, **16:129**
- White House policy, **16:124**

## CUSTODIAN

- Intrastate offerings under Section 3(a)(11), **4:49**

## CUSTOMARY BROKER'S COMMISSION

- Brokers' special exemption, Section 4(a)(4), **13:22**

## CUSTOMERS

- Brokers' Special Exemption, Section 4(a)(4)**  
(this index)

## CUTOFF

- Rescission offers, **16:30**

## CYBERSECURITY AND INFRASTRUCTURE SECURITY AGENCY ACT OF 2018

- Digital assets, **16:125**

**DEALER**

See also **Dealers' Exemption, Section 4(a)(3)**  
(this index)

**Dealers' Exemption, Section 4(a)(3)** (this index)

Intrastate offerings under Section 3(a)(11), **4:64**

Private resales, Rule 144A, **10A:13, 10A:14**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:220**

Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:19, 9:28, 9:29, 9:40**

Section 4(a)(3). **Dealers' Exemption, Section 4(a)(3)** (this index)

**DEALER QUA DEALER**

**Dealers' Exemption, Section 4(a)(3)** (this index)

**DEALERS' EXEMPTION, SECTION 4(A)(3)**

Generally, **12:1 et seq.**

Access equals delivery release, **12:26.50**

Administrative law, **12:12**

Broker-dealer activity during illegal distributions, Section 4(3)(A), **12:15 to 12:17**

Broker-dealer activity during registered offerings

Generally, **12:18 to 12:26.50**

Access equals delivery release, **12:26.50**

Electronic delivery, **12:25 to 12:26.50**

Forty-day obligation, generally, **12:19**

Investment Company Act Section 24(d), **12:23**

Investors in same household, **12:24**

1995 electronic media release, **12:25**

Ninety-day obligation, **12:21, 12:22**

Rule 174

Forty-day obligation, **12:20**

Ninety-day obligation, **12:22**

Special obligation, **12:23**

2000 electronic media release, **12:26**

Broker-dealer participating in registered offerings, Section 4(a)(3)(C)

Generally, **12:27 to 12:32**

Halsey, Stuart & Co., **12:30**

Purchases by dealers for investment, **12:31**

Rule 144A transactions, **12:32**

Underwriter turned dealer, **12:28**

Unsold allotments, **12:29 to 12:31**

Broker-dealers, exempted transactions for, **12:13, 12:14**

Changes, modifications, and amendments, **12:6**

Dealer qua dealer

Generally, **12:8 to 12:12**

Dealer defined, **12:8**

Dealer or underwriter, **12:9 to 12:12**

Inquiry, duty of, **12:11, 12:12**

Judicial and administrative interpretations, **12:12**

Rule 141, **12:10**

Definitions, **12:8**

Delivery, electronic, **12:25 to 12:26.50**

**DEALERS' EXEMPTION, SECTION 4(A)(3)**

—Cont'd

Distribution, **12:3, 12:4, 12:15 to 12:17**

Electronic delivery, **12:25 to 12:26.50**

Electronic media release, **12:25, 12:26**

Eligible securities, **12:14**

Everyday transactions, **12:13**

Forty-day obligation

Generally, **12:19**

Rule 172, **12:20.50**

Rule 173, **12:20.70**

Rule 174, **12:20**

Forty days, measuring, **12:16**

Halsey, Stuart & Co., **12:30**

Household, investors in same, **12:24**

Inquiry, duty of, **12:11, 12:12**

Interpretations, **12:12**

Investment, purchases by dealers for, **12:31**

Investment Company Act Section 24(d), **12:23**

Investors in same household, **12:24**

Judicial and administrative interpretations, **12:12**

Media release, **12:25, 12:26, 12:26.50**

1933-1954 statutory exemption, **12:5**

1954-1964 amendments, **12:6**

1995 electronic media release, **12:25**

Ninety-day obligation, **12:21, 12:22**

Outstanding class, additional securities, **12:33**

Present form, exempt in, **12:7**

Purchases by dealers for investment, **12:31**

Registration, **12:3, 12:4**

Releases, **12:25 to 12:26.50**

Rule 141, **12:10**

Rule 144A transactions, **12:17, 12:32**

Rule 172, forty-day obligation, **12:20.50**

Rule 173, forty-day obligation, **12:20.70**

Rule 174

Forty-day obligation, **12:20**

Ninety-day obligation, **12:22**

Section 4(a)(3)(A), **12:15 to 12:17**

Special obligation, **12:23**

2000 electronic media release, **12:26**

Underwriter, **12:9 to 12:12, 12:28**

Unsold allotments, **12:29 to 12:31**

**DEBTOR**

Reorganization with court or agency approval

under Section 3(a)(10), **3:43, 3:44 to 3:46, 3:47, 3:49, 3:51**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities,

Rule 144, **10:149**

Rescinded Rule 148, **1:79**

**DEBTS**

Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A, **6:36**

**DEBTS—Cont'd**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities,  
Rule 144, **10:120**  
Rescinded Rule 234 § 3(b), **1:42**

**DEBT SECURITIES**

Extraterritorial application of registration requirements, Regulation S, **15A:28, 15A:29**  
Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:174**  
Resale of restricted and controlled securities,  
Rule 144, **10:75.50, 10:183.50**

**DECEPTIVE ACT OR PRACTICE**

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:199**

**DEDUCTIONS**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D,  
**7:197, 7:198**

**DEFENSES**

Section 12(a)(1), **16:61 to 16:64**  
Section 12(a)(2), **16:117 to 16:120**

**DEFICIENCY**

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:195**  
Resale of restricted and controlled securities,  
Rule 144, **10:85**

**DEFINITIONS**

Access offerees, **11:79**  
Business development companies, **7:57 et seq.**  
Cross-border rights offerings, exchange offers and business combinations, **8:45**  
Customers, **13:28**  
Dealer, **12:8**  
**Limited Offering Exemptions, Regulation D** (this index)  
Materiality, **16:103**  
**Nonpublic Offerings** (this index)  
Offering, **7:199, 7:201**  
Prospectus, **16:100**  
Purchase, **16:77**  
Rescinded Rule 148, **1:77**  
**Restricted and Controlled Securities** (this index)  
**Routine Trading Under Section 4(a)(1)** (this index)  
Underwriter, **3:86 to 3:88**

**DELAY**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities,  
Rule 144, **10:111**

**DELINQUENT ISSUER**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities,  
Rule 144, **10:84**

**DELIVERY**

Dealers' exemption, Section 4(a)(3), **12:25 to 12:26.50**

**DELIVERY—Cont'd**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities,  
Rule 144, **10:111**  
Section 12(a)(1), illegal deliveries, **16:38**  
**Security Futures Products and Standardized Options** (this index)

**DEMONSTRATION**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:32**

**DEPARTMENT OF JUSTICE (DOJ)**

Revisions, whistleblower program, **16:121**

**DEPOSITOR**

Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:4**

**DERIVATIVE SECURITIES**

**Real Estate Mortgage Securities, Section 4(5)** (this index)  
**Security Futures Products and Standardized Options** (this index)

**DESCRIPTION**

Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A, **6:66**  
Resale of restricted and controlled securities,  
Rule 144, **10:68**

**DESIGNATED ENTITIES**

**Private Resales, Rule 144A** (this index)

**DIGITAL ASSETS**

Cryptocurrency trading platforms, **16:129**  
Cybersecurity and Infrastructure Security Agency Act of 2018, **16:125**  
Definitions, **16:124**  
Non-fungible tokens (NFTs), **16:128**  
SEC enforcement policy, **16:124**  
Stablecoins, **16:127**  
State UCC, **16:124**  
White House policy, **16:124**

**DILUTION**

Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A, **6:67**

**DIRECT COMMUNICATION**

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:130**

**DIRECTED SELLING**

Extraterritorial Application of Registration Requirements, Regulation S (this index)

**DIRECT NEGOTIATIONS**

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:175**

**DIRECT OFFERINGS**

Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A, **6:76, 6:77**

**DIRECTORS**

Officers and Directors (this index)

**DIRECT PARTICIPATION**

Reorganization with court or agency approval under Section 3(a)(10), **3:21**

**DISAPPEARANCE**

Recapitalizations (this index)

**DISCHARGE**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:124**

**DISCIPLINARY SANCTIONS**

Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A, **6:95**

**DISCLOSURE**

Accredited investors, **14:4**

Climate change risk disclosures, SEC final rules, **1:6**

Intrastate offerings under Section 3(a)(11), **4:72**, **4:73**

**Limited Offering Exemptions, Regulation D** (this index)

Mini-registration under section 3(b), Regulation A

State regulators, mandatory disclosure by issuers to

Generally, **6:121 to 6:123**

Tier 1: registered disclosure, **6:122**

Tier 2: unregistered disclosure, **6:123**

**Nonpublic Offerings** (this index)

Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), **2:3**, **2:22.50**

Reorganization with court or agency approval under Section 3(a)(10), **3:21**, **3:35**

Rescinded Rule 242 § 3(b), **1:71**

Rescission offers, **16:29**

Section 3(b) and 3(c), **8:11**, **8:35**, **8:36**

Security futures products and standardized options, **5A:9**

SEC v. Ralston Purina Co., **11:19**

**DISCOVERY RECORD**

Reorganization with court or agency approval under Section 3(a)(10), **3:18**

**DISGORGEMENT**

Legislative grant of authority, **16:126**

SEC Disgorgement Authority, **16:126**

**DISPOSITION**

**Nonpublic Offerings** (this index)

**DISQUALIFICATIONS**

**Qualifications and Disqualifications** (this index)

**DISSIMILARITY OF SECURITIES**

Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), **2:21**

**DISSOLUTION**

Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), **2:36**

**DISSOLUTION—Cont'd**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:74**

**DISTRIBUTION**

Dealers' exemption, Section 4(a)(3), **12:3**, **12:4**, **12:15 to 12:17**

Intrastate offerings under Section 3(a)(11), **4:31**

Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A, **6:54**

Reorganization with court or agency approval under Section 3(a)(10), **3:11**, **3:12**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:67**

**Routine Trading Under Section 4(a)(1)** (this index)

**DISTRICT COURT**

SEC v. Ralston Purina Co., **11:22**

**DIVIDENDS**

Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), **2:53**, **2:54**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:70**

Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:37**

**DOING BUSINESS**

**Intrastate Offerings Under Section 3(a)(11) and Rule 147A** (this index)

**DOMESTICALLY ORGANIZED ISSUERS**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D—charts, **App 7F**

**DOMESTIC ISSUERS**

Private resales, Rule 144A, **10A:52**

**DOMESTIC PRESS ACCESS**

Extraterritorial application of registration requirements, Regulation S, **15A:17**

**DOMICILE**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:75**

**DONOR**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:50**, **10:51**

**DUE CARE STANDARDS**

Violations, Section 12(a)(2), **16:119**

**DUE DILIGENCE**

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:191**

**ECONOMIC BARGAINING POWER**

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:74**

**EDGAR**

SEC EDGAR filing codes, **1:135**

## EDUCATION

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:65**

## ELECTION

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:62**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:241**

## ELECTRICITY GENERATING PLANTS

Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:9**

## ELECTRONIC DELIVERY

Dealers' exemption, Section 4(a)(3), **12:25 to 12:26.50**

## ELECTRONIC FILING

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:169**

## ELECTRONIC MEDIA RELEASE

Dealers' exemption, Section 4(a)(3), **12:25, 12:26**

## ELIGIBILITY

Dealers' exemption, Section 4(a)(3), **12:14**

**Limited Offering Exemptions, Regulation D** (this index)

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:99**

Private resales, Rule 144A, **10A:3, 10A:4, 10A:27**

**Private Resales, Rule 144A** (this index)

Real estate mortgage securities, Section 4(5), **1:110**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:79, 10:80, 10:88**

Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:62 to 9:64**

**Section 3(b) and 3(c)** (this index)

## EMPLOYEE BENEFIT PLAN

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:88, 7:105 to 7:108**

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:51**

**Restricted and Controlled Securities** (this index)

**Section 3(b) and 3(c)** (this index)

## EMPLOYEE OFFERINGS

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:178**

## EMPLOYEES

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:285**

Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), **2:64**

## EMPLOYEE STOCK OPTION PLAN

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:173**

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:167**

SEC v. Ralston Purina Co., **11:16**

## ENFORCEMENT

Cooperation in SEC Enforcement Investigations, **16:2**

FINRA enforcement proceedings, **16:7**

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:44**

Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:36**

Sanctions, **16:11**

## EQUIPMENT TRUST CERTIFICATES

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:93, 7:94**

Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:6 to 9:9**

## EQUITABLE RELIEF

Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A, **6:94**

## EQUITABLE TOLLING

Violations, Section 12(a)(1), **16:55**

## EQUITY LINES

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:258**

## EQUITY OWNERS

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:76**

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:100**

## EQUITY SECURITIES

Extraterritorial application of registration requirements, Regulation S, **15A:27, 15A:29**

## ESCROW

Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A, **6:23**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:113**

## ESTABLISHED BUSINESSES

Intrastate offerings under Section 3(a)(11), **4:25**

## ESTATE

Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144

Amount of securities sold, limitation on, Rule 144(e), **10:191, 10:201 to 10:205**

Definitions, Rule 144(a), **10:41, 10:45 to 10:47, 10:56 to 10:58**

Fiduciary for trust, account, or estate, **10:19**

Nonaffiliate estates and beneficiaries, **10:227**

Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:81**

## EVERYDAY TRANSACTIONS

Dealers' exemption, Section 4(a)(3), **12:13**

## EVIDENCE

Burden of proof, **1:18**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:158, 7:159**

**Nonpublic Offerings** (this index)

Private resales, Rule 144A, **10A:40, 10A:41**

Violations, Section 12(a)(1), **16:61**

**EXCHANGE**

Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A, **6:43, 6:44**

**Recapitalizations** (this index)

**Reorganization** (this index)

Restricted and controlled securities, **10:140**

**EXCHANGE ACT**

Extraterritorial application of registration requirements, Regulation S, **15A:5 to 15A:7**

Form 8-K reporting, regulation S, **15A:6**

Section 16(b), short swing profit rule, **10:234.10**

**EXCHANGE AGREEMENT**

Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), **2:16 to 2:19**

**EXCHANGE OFFER**

**Cross-Border Rights Offerings, Exchange Offers and Business Combinations** (this index)

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:259**

Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), **2:15, 2:48**

**EXCHANGE SECURITIES AND WARRANTS**

Private resales, Rule 144A, **10A:23**

**EXCLUDED CASH FORWARD CONTRACTS**

Security futures products and standardized options, **5A:2**

**EXECUTION OF ORDERS**

Brokers' special exemption, Section 4(a)(4), **13:40**

**EXECUTIVE OFFICERS**

**Officers and Directors** (this index)

**EXECUTOR**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:47**

**EXEMPTIONS**

2025 SEC statements policies to develop a new cryptocurrency regulatory regime, **1:16**

Generally, **1:13**

Application of Howey Test, **1:15**

Crowdfunding, registration, **15:25**

Exemptive authority, **1:17**

Rescinded Regulation B, **1:127 to 1:129**

Rescinded Regulation F, **1:130 to 1:132**

Rescinded Rule 505, **1:134**

Rule 147A, **4:74 to 4:76**

SEC compliance and interpretations for Regulation D, **1:20**

Securities, definition, **1:14**

Summary, transactional exemptions, **1:24**

**EXHIBITS**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:128**

**Mini-Registration Under Section 3(b), Regulation A** (this index)

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:121**

**EXISTING PROTECTION**

Intrastate offerings under Section 3(a)(11) and rule 147A, **4:70, 4:74**

**EXPENSES**

Brokers' special exemption, Section 4(a)(4), **13:23**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:309 to 7:311**

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:186**

**EXTERNAL REORGANIZATIONS**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:135**

**EXTRATERRITORIAL APPLICATION OF REGISTRATION REQUIREMENTS, REGULATION S**

Generally, **15A:1 et seq.**

Abuses. Resale safe harbor, Rule 904, below  
Changes, modifications, and amendments, **15A:2 to 15A:4, 15A:40**

Compliance issues, foreign, **15A:50**

Conditions. General conditions, below

Debt securities, **15A:28, 15A:29**

Directed selling efforts. General conditions, below

Domestic press access, **15A:17**

Equity securities, **15A:27, 15A:29**

Exchange Act reporting, **15A:5 to 15A:7**

Foreign compliance issues, **15A:50**

Foreign countries, **15A:43**

Foreign funds, **15A:49**

Foreign press access, **15A:17**

Form 8-K reporting, **15A:6**

Form 8-K reporting, **15A:6**

General conditions

Generally, **15A:10 to 15A:18**

Directed selling efforts

Generally, **15A:12 to 15A:18**

Internet, use of, **15A:13**

Offshore press conferences, Rule 135e

Generally, **15A:14 to 15A:18**

Offshore offering, **15A:16**

Press access, domestic and foreign, **15A:17**

Written materials requirements, **15A:18**

Offshore press conferences, Rule 135e.

Directed selling efforts, above this group

Offshore transactions, **15A:11**

**EXTRATERRITORIAL APPLICATION OF REGISTRATION REQUIREMENTS, REGULATION S—Cont'd**

Integration of U.S. offerings and Regulation S offerings, **15A:48, 15A:49**

Internet, use in directed selling efforts, **15A:13**

Issuer safe harbor, Rule 903

- Generally, **15A:19 to 15A:32**
- Issuer category 1, **15A:20, 15A:21**
- Issuer category 2, **15A:22 to 15A:24**
- Issuer category 3

  - Generally, **15A:25 to 15A:32**
  - Debt or equity securities, **15A:29**
  - Debt securities, **15A:28**
  - Equity or debt securities, **15A:29**
  - Equity securities, **15A:27**
  - Offering restrictions, **15A:30**
  - “Offshore transactions” of persons with ties to U.S., presence in, **15A:31**
  - Transactional restrictions, **15A:26 to 15A:29**

- Offering restrictions, **15A:24, 15A:30**
- Terms, **15A:21**
- Transactional restrictions, **15A:23, 15A:26 to 15A:29**

Limitations and restrictions

- Issuer safe harbor, Rule 903
- Issuer category 3, **15A:26 to 15A:29**
- Offering restrictions, **15A:24**
- Transactional restrictions, **15A:23**
- Resale safe harbor, Rule 904, **15A:42 to 15A:45**

1996 release, periodic reporting, **15A:39**

1997 release, proposed amendments, **15A:40**

1998 amendments, **15A:2 to 15A:4**

Offerings

- Foreign compliance issues, **15A:50**
- General conditions, **15A:16**
- Integration of U.S. offerings and Regulation S offerings, **15A:48, 15A:49**
- Issuer safe harbor, Rule 903, **15A:24, 15A:30**

Offshore, see lines throughout this index topic

Periodic reporting, **15A:39**

Press access, domestic and foreign, **15A:17**

Problematic problems release, **15A:38**

Quarterly reporting, effective January 1, 1999, **15A:7**

Releases, **15A:38 to 15A:40**

Reliance, **15A:45, 15A:46**

Reports and reporting, **15A:5 to 15A:7, 15A:39**

Resale safe harbor, Rule 904

- Generally, **15A:33 to 15A:47**
- Abuses, potential, generally, **15A:34 to 15A:40**

**EXTRATERRITORIAL APPLICATION OF REGISTRATION REQUIREMENTS, REGULATION S—Cont'd**

Resale safe harbor, Rule 904—Cont'd

- Compliance, resales of securities sold offshore not in compliance with Regulation S, **15A:47**
- Foreign countries, **15A:43**
- Limitations and restrictions, **15A:42 to 15A:45**
- 1996 release, periodic reporting, **15A:39**
- 1997 release, proposed amendments, **15A:40**
- Potential abuses, generally, **15A:34 to 15A:40**
- Problematic problems release, **15A:38**
- Rule 903, **15A:35, 15A:45**
- Rule 905, **15A:41**
- SEC responses to abusive practices, **15A:37 to 15A:40**
- United States, **15A:44 to 15A:47**

Responses, **15A:37 to 15A:40**

Rule 901, **15A:9**

Rule 903

- Issuer safe harbor, Rule 903, above
- Resale safe harbor, Rule 904, **15A:35, 15A:45**
- Rule 904. Resale safe harbor, Rule 904, above
- Rule 905, **15A:41**
- Safe harbor. Issuer safe harbor, Rule 903, above
- SEC responses to abusive practices, **15A:37 to 15A:40**

Terms, Issuer safe harbor, Rule 903, **15A:21**

Transactional restrictions, **15A:23, 15A:26 to 15A:29**

United States

- Foreign compliance issues, **15A:50**
- Integration of U.S. offerings and Regulation S offerings, **15A:48, 15A:49**
- Resale safe harbor, Rule 904, **15A:44 to 15A:47**

Written materials requirements, **15A:18**

**FAIRNESS**

**Reorganization** (this index)

**FAIRNESS HEARINGS**

**Reorganization** (this index)

**FAMILY AND RELATIVES**

Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A, **6:60**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144

- Aggregation by persons working in concert, **10:211**
- Amount of securities sold, limitation on, Rule 144(e), **10:190**
- Definitions, Rule 144(a), **10:40, 10:44**

**FEDERAL ATTITUDE**

Rescission offers, **16:21**

**FEDERAL CASE LAW**Violations, Section 12(a)(2), **16:116****FEDERAL PREEMPTION**Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:237, 7:280****FEDERAL SECURITIES LAWS**Amendments, security futures products and standardized options, **5A:4****FEDERAL STATE COORDINATION**Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:216, 7:293****FEDERAL STATE REGISTRATION EXEMPTIONS**Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:264****FELONS AND OTHER BAD ACTORS**Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:202.10, 7:233**Nonpublic offerings, issuer transactions, **7:202.10, 11:27.40****FHLMC**Real estate mortgage securities, Section 4(5), **1:97****FICTIONAL BUSINESS ENTITIES**Intrastate offerings under Section 3(a)(11), **4:48****FIDUCIARIES**Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:39, 11:40**Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:18, 10:19, 10:209****FILMING MOTION PICTURES**Intrastate offerings under Section 3(a)(11), **4:31****FINANCE COMPANIES**Liable persons, Section 12(a)(2), **16:91****FINANCIAL ADVISERS**Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), **2:65****FINANCIAL INDUSTRY REGULATORY AUTHORITY (FINRA)**Enforcement proceedings, administrative sanctions, **16:7****FINANCIALLY SOUND BUSINESS**Reorganization with court or agency approval under Section 3(a)(10), **3:93 to 3:95****FINANCIALLY TROUBLED BUSINESSES****Reorganization** (this index)**FINANCIAL STATEMENT**Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:122 to 7:125****FINANCIAL STATEMENT—Cont'd**

Mini-Registration Under Section 3(b), Regulation A (this index)

Private resales, Rule 144A, **10A:32****FINANCING**Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:7****FINDERS**Registration, **1:12**Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:59 to 10:61**Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:41****FIRST LIENS****Rescinded Rule 234 § 3(b)** (this index)**FIRST REFUSAL**Intrastate offerings under Section 3(a)(11), **4:62****FIXED TERMS**Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:73****FLORIDA 2024 DISQUALIFICATION RULE**Private resales, **10A:59****FNMA**Commitments table, **1:124**Portfolio table, **1:125**Real estate mortgage securities, Section 4(5), **1:94 to 1:96, 1:124, 1:125****FORECLOSURE SALES**Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:82****FOREIGN COUNTRIES****Cross-Border Rights Offerings** (this index)Extraterritorial application of registration requirements, Regulation S, **15A:43**Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:89**Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:52**Offshore tender and exchange offers, rights offerings and business combinations, **8:62**Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:87****FOREIGN FUNDS**Extraterritorial application of registration requirements, Regulation S, **15A:49****FOREIGN INVESTORS**Intrastate offerings under Section 3(a)(11), **4:41**Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:48****FOREIGN ISSUERS**Private resales, Rule 144A, **10A:50 to 10A:53**Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:73**Section 3(b) and 3(c), **8:19, 8:34, 8:36****FOREIGN OFFEREES**Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:136**

**FOREIGN OFFEREES—Cont'd**

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:135**

**FOREIGN OFFERING**

Extraterritorial application of registration requirements, foreign compliance issues, **15A:50**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:115**

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:30, 11:34**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:62**

**FOREIGN PRESS ACCESS**

Extraterritorial application of registration requirements, Regulation S, **15A:17**

**FOREIGN PRIVATE ISSUERS**

Section 3(b) and 3(c), **8:34, 8:36**

**FOREIGN SECURITY HOLDER**

Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), **2:72, 2:73**

**FORM 8-K REPORTING**

Extraterritorial application of registration requirements, Regulation S, **15A:6**

**FORMAL AGREEMENTS**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, determination of amount, Rule 144(e)(3), persons acting in concert, **10:207**

**FORM D**

Filing, **App 1E**

**FORMS**

Form 8-K reporting, Exchange Act, **15A:6**

Form D, limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:169, App 7B**

Intrastate offerings under Section 3(a)(11), form of offers, **4:50**

Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A, former form 7-A, **6:24**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, Form 144, **10:233**

Section 3(b) and 3(c), fractional shares, scrip certificates or order forms, Rule 236, **8:1 to 8:3**

**FOR-PROFIT ORGANIZATIONS**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:65, 7:69**

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:93**

**FORTY-DAY OBLIGATION**

Dealers' exemption, Section 4(a)(3), generally, **12:19**

Rule 172, **12.20.50, 12:20.50**

Rule 173, **12.20.70, 12:20.70**

Rule 174, **12:20**

**FORTY DAYS**

Dealers' exemption, Section 4(a)(3), **12:16**

**FRACTIONAL BENEFICIAL INTERESTS**

Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:13**

**FRACTIONAL SHARES**

Section 3(b) and 3(c), **8:1 to 8:3**

**FRACTIONAL UNDIVIDED INTERESTS**

Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:10 to 9:13**

**FRAUD**

Administrative suspension of Regulation A exemption, misleading statements, **6:101**  
Crowdfunding, intermediary requirements, reduction, **15:18**

**Nonpublic Offerings** (this index)

Offer, misleading, seller's response to violation, **16:17**

Security futures products and standardized options, **5A:10**

**FREE SHARES**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:251**

Restricted and controlled securities, **10:36.02**

**FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

Regulation SBSR, security based swaps, **5A:14**

**FRIENDS**

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:81**

**FULL COLLATERALIZATION**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:123**

**FULL DISCHARGE**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:124**

**FULL DISCLOSURE**

Reorganization with court or agency approval under Section 3(a)(10), **3:21**

**FULL PURCHASE PRICE AND OTHER CONSIDERATION**

**Restricted and Controlled Securities** (this index)

**FULL RE COURSE**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:122, 10:148 to 10:150**

**FUNGIBILITY**

Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:26**

**FUTURES**

**Security Futures Products and Standardized Options** (this index)

**FUTURE SUCCESSIONS**

Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A, **6:84**

**GAS**

Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:10 to 9:13**

**GENERAL ADVERTISING AND SOLICITATION**

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:131, 11:131.25**

Solicitations of interest prior to registration public offering, **11:131.25**

**GENERAL ANNOUNCEMENTS**

Section 3(b) and 3(c), **8:12**

**GENERAL CONDITIONS**

Extraterritorial Application of Registration Requirements, Regulation S (this index)

Limited Offering Exemptions, Regulation D (this index)

**GENERAL PARTNERS**

Liable persons, Section 12(a)(2), **16:88**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:70**

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:94**

**GENERAL PURPOSE EXEMPTIONS**

Exemptions, private and limited securities offerings, **App 1A**

Issuer exemptions, **App 1A**

SEC disclosure guidance letters, **App 1G**

Seller exemptions, **1:32, 1:35**

Williams Act, **App 1F**

**GENERAL SOLICITATION**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D—lifting ban on general solicitation as suggested reform, **7:165**

Private resales, Rule 144A, **10A:46, 10A:47, 10A:47.10, 10A:47.20**

**GIFTS**

Restricted and controlled securities, **10:50, 10:51, 10:154 to 10:156, 10:196, 10:197**

Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:81**

**GILLIGAN, WILL & CO. v. SEC**

Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:111, 9:112, 9:115 to 9:117**

**GNMA**

Mortgage backed securities program, chart, **1:126**

Real estate mortgage securities, Section 4(5), **1:94 to 1:96, 1:102**

**GOOD FAITH**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:249**

**GOOD FAITH—Cont'd**

Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A, **6:115**

**GOVERNMENT-SPONSORED HOUSING ENTERPRISES**

Real Estate Mortgage Securities, Section 4(5) (this index)

**GROSS REVENUES**

Intrastate offerings under Section 3(a)(11), **4:35**

**GUARANTEED OBLIGATIONS**

Recapitalizations (this index)

Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:119, 10:130**

**GUSTAFSON v. ALLOYD CO.**

Violations (this index)

**GYPSY SWAPS**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:252**

Restricted and controlled securities, sales of shares acquired in “gypsy swaps,” **10:36.03**

**HALSEY, STUART & CO.**

Dealers’ exemption, Section 4(a)(3), **12:30**

**HEARING**

Reorganization (this index)

Sanctions, **16:10**

**HOLDER OF SECURITIES**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:31**

**HOLDING COMPANY**

Exchange requirement

Generally, **5:7 to 5:9**

Integration problem, **5:9**

Security holders of company, **5:8**

Reorganization of bank or savings association into, Section 3(a)(12)

Generally, **5:1 to 5:10**

Acquired company, nature of, **5:6**

Application of Section 5 of Rule 145, **5:3**

Exchange requirement, above

Nature of holding company, **5:5**

Relationship to Rule 145, **5:3**

Resales of securities, **5:10**

Rule 145, relationship to, **5:3**

Rule 145 Section 5, application of, **5:3**

Section 3(a)(9), **5:3, 5:4**

Section 3(a)(10), **5:3, 5:4**

Resale of securities

Rule 144, **10:167**

Section 3(a)(12) acquisition, **5:10**

**HOLDING PERIOD**

**Restricted and Controlled Securities** (this index)  
    Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:24**

**HOUSEHOLD**

    Dealers' exemption, Section 4(a)(3), **12:24**

**HOUSING**

**Rescinded Rule 235 § 3(b)** (this index)

**HOUSING ENTERPRISES**

**Real Estate Mortgage Securities, Section 4(5)**  
        (this index)

**HUD**

    Real estate mortgage securities, Section 4(5),  
        **1:114 to 1:116**

**IDENTICAL SECURITIES**

    Private resales, Rule 144A, **10A:22**

**IDENTITY AND IDENTIFICATION**

    Intrastate offerings under Section 3(a)(11), **4:27**  
    Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:53**  
    Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A, **6:59**  
    Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:38 to 11:40, 11:84**  
    Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), **2:28**  
    Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:139**  
    **Routine Trading Under Section 4(a)(1)** (this index)

**IGNORANCE**

    Violations, Section 12(a)(2), **16:109, 16:110**

**INCOME**

    Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:72**  
    Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:96**

**INDEPENDENCE**

    Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:96**  
    Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:102**

**INDIVIDUALS**

    Intrastate offerings under Section 3(a)(11), **4:40, 4:41, 4:47**  
    Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:101, 10:107**

**INDUSTRY GROUP**

    Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:303**

**IN EXCHANGE**

    Reorganization with court or agency approval under Section 3(a)(10), **3:7, 3:38, 3:60**

**INFORMATION**

**Limited Offering Exemptions, Regulation D**  
        (this index)

**INFORMATION—Cont'd**

**Nonpublic Offerings** (this index)  
        Private resales, Rule 144A, **10A:43 to 10A:45**

**INNOCENT PURCHASERS**

    Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:64**

**IN PARI DELICTO**

    Violations, Section 12(a)(1), **16:63, 16:64**

**INQUIRIES**

    Brokers' special exemption, Section 4(a)(4), **13:35 to 13:38**  
    Dealers' exemption, Section 4(a)(3), **12:11, 12:12**

**IN RE IRA HAUPt & CO.**

    Brokers' special exemption, Section 4(a)(4), **13:8**

**INSTALLMENTS**

    Intrastate offerings under Section 3(a)(11), **4:51, 4:56**  
    **Restricted and Controlled Securities** (this index)

**INSTITUTIONAL ADVERTISING**

    Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:150**  
    Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:146**

**INSTITUTIONAL BUYERS**

    Private resales, Rule 144A, **10A:24, 10A:34**

**INSTITUTIONAL INVESTORS**

    Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:56**  
    Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:87**  
    Private resales, Rule 144A, **10A:54**

**INSTITUTIONAL PRIVATE PLACEMENTS**

**Nonpublic Offerings** (this index)

**INSURANCE COMPANY**

    Liable persons, Section 12(a)(2), **16:92**  
    Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:94**

**INTEGRATED OFFERINGS**

    Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A, **6:35**  
    Reorganization with court or agency approval under Section 3(a)(10), **3:79**

**INTEGRATION**

    Extraterritorial application of registration requirements, Regulation S, **15A:48, 15A:49**  
    Holding companies, **5:9**

**Limited Offering Exemptions, Regulation D**  
        (this index)

**Nonpublic Offerings** (this index)

    Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), **2:62**

    Resales of restricted and controlled securities, relevance of integration concept, **10:42.10**

**INTEGRATION OF OFFERINGS DOCTRINE  
(REVISED RULE 152A)**Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), **2:58****INTENT**Intrastate offerings under Section 3(a)(11), **4:53**  
Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:159**  
Resale of restricted and controlled securities,  
Rule 144, **10:237****INTERDEALER QUOTATION SYSTEM**Brokers' special exemption, Section 4(a)(4),  
**13:38****INTEREST**Intrastate offerings under Section 3(a)(11), **4:71**  
Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation  
A, **6:65, 6:87****Restricted and Controlled Securities** (this  
index)Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:10 to  
9:13**Violations, **16:3 to 16:6****INTEREST ON MONEY**Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), **2:53,  
2:54**Violations, Section 12(a)(1), **16:58****INTERNAL REORGANIZATIONS**Resale of restricted and controlled securities,  
Rule 144, **10:134****INTERNAL REVENUE SERVICE**Resale of restricted and controlled securities,  
Rule 144, **10:36****INTERNET**Cross-border rights offerings, exchange offers  
and business combinations, **8:60, 8:61**  
Extraterritorial application of registration require-  
ments, Regulation S, **15A:13**  
Rule 506 transactions—online offers, **7:279****INTERPRETATION****Construction and Interpretation** (this index)**INTERPRETATIVE LETTERS AND  
RELEASES**Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:43**  
Source materials, **1:22****INTERSTATE COMMERCE**Intrastate offerings under Section 3(a)(11), **4:3**  
Violations  
Section 12(a)(1), **16:48 to 16:50**  
Section 12(a)(2), **16:94 to 16:96****INTRASTATE OFFERINGS UNDER SECTION  
3(A)(11) AND RULE 147A**Generally, **4:1 to 4:76**  
Affiliates, **4:18, 4:19****INTRASTATE OFFERINGS UNDER SECTION  
3(A)(11) AND RULE 147A—Cont'd**Agents, transfer, **4:17**  
Agreements, installment, **4:56**  
Assets, total, **4:36**  
Binding subscription agreements, **4:57**  
Busch v. Carpenter, **4:54**  
Business associations, **4:42**  
Business entities, Subsection (d)(1), **4:46**  
Certificates and certification, **4:63**  
Chapman versus Dunn, **4:23**  
Contracts and agreements, **4:57**  
Corporations and business associations, **4:42**  
Custodian, **4:49**  
Dealers, **4:64**  
Differences  
    Rule 147, **4:2**  
    Rule 147A, **4:2**  
Different issuers, substitution of securities before  
issue comes to rest, **4:60**  
Disclosure, **4:72, 4:73**  
Distribution, **4:31**  
Doing business  
    Generally, **4:22 to 4:27**  
    Chapman versus Dunn, **4:23**  
    Established businesses, **4:25**  
    Filming and distribution of motion pictures,  
        **4:31**  
    Identification of predominant business, **4:27**  
    Investment businesses, **4:32**  
    Motion pictures, **4:31**  
    New businesses, **4:24**  
    Outside Rule 147, generally, **4:22 to 4:27**  
    Predominant business, **4:26, 4:27**  
    Railroad cars, **4:30**  
    Rule 147, generally, **4:28 to 4:32**  
    Rule 147(c)(2), generally, **4:33 to 4:38**  
    Shipping and marine ventures, **4:29**  
    Staff interpretations  
        Generally, **4:34 to 4:38**  
        Employee location (c)(2)(iv), **4:38**  
        Gross revenues, Subsection (c)(2)(i), **4:35**  
        Predominant business, **4:26, 4:27**  
        Proceeds, use of, Subsection (c)(2)(iii), **4:37**  
        Total assets, Subsection (c)(2)(ii), **4:36**  
    Employee location, Subsection (c)(2)(iv), **4:38**  
    Established businesses, **4:25**  
    Evaluation of Rule 147(g), **4:12**  
    Evaluation of Section 3(a)(11) and Rule 147  
        Generally, **4:67 to 4:73**  
        Disclosure, **4:72, 4:73**  
        Existing protection, **4:70**  
        National interest, **4:71**  
        Testing premises, **4:68 to 4:71**  
    Exemptions, **4:6, 4:74**

**INTRASTATE OFFERINGS UNDER SECTION 3(A)(11) AND RULE 147A—Cont'd**

- Existing protection, **4:70, 4:74**
- Federal intrastate exemption
  - Comparison, **4:1**
  - Elements, **4:1**
- Fictional business entities, Subsection (d)(3), **4:48**
- Filming and distribution of motion pictures, **4:31**
- First refusal, right of, **4:62**
- Foreign investors, **4:41**
- Form of offers, **4:50**
- Gross revenues, Subsection (c)(2)(i), **4:35**
- Identification of predominant business, **4:27**
- Individuals, **4:40, 4:41, 4:47**
- Installment agreements, **4:56**
- Installment sales, **4:51**
- Intent, **4:53**
- Interest, national, **4:71**
- Interpretation, staff. Doing business, above
- Interpretative problems under Rule 147, **4:66**
- Interstate commerce, facilities of, **4:3**
- Investment businesses, **4:32**
- Investment intent, **4:53**
- Investors, **4:41**
- Issuer
  - Generally, **4:13 to 4:38**
  - Doing business, above
  - Person resident, below
  - Resident. Person resident, below
- Mail and mailing, **4:3**
- Marine ventures, **4:29**
- Motion pictures, **4:31**
- National interest, **4:71**
- New businesses, **4:24**
- Nonresidents
  - Custodian or trustee, **4:49**
  - Person resident, **4:18**
  - Resales to nonresidents, below
  - Residence of offerees and purchasers, **4:49**
- Offerees. Residence of offerees and purchasers, below
- Offers, form of, **4:50**
- Partnerships, **4:14, 4:43**
- Part of an issue concept, **4:10 to 4:12, 4:20**
- Person resident
  - Generally, **4:13 to 4:38**
  - Outside Rule 147, generally, **4:13 to 4:20**
  - Partnerships, **4:14**
    - Part of an issue concept, **4:20**
    - Resident affiliates, **4:19**
    - Resident and nonresident affiliates, **4:18**
    - Rule 147(c)(1), **4:21**
    - Single business enterprise, **4:18 to 4:20**
    - Transfer agent, **4:17**

**INTRASTATE OFFERINGS UNDER SECTION 3(A)(11) AND RULE 147A—Cont'd**

- Person resident—Cont'd
  - Trusts, **4:15**
  - Underwriters, **4:16**
- Precautionary measures
  - Generally, **4:61 to 4:65**
  - First refusal, right of, **4:62**
  - Outside Rule 147, **4:61 to 4:64**
  - Rule 147(f), **4:65**
  - Salespeople and dealers, **4:64**
  - Single certificate, **4:63**
- Predominant business, **4:26, 4:27**
- Primary offerings, **4:5 to 4:7, 4:9**
- Proceeds, use of, Subsection (c)(2)(iii), **4:37**
- Purchasers. Residence of offerees and purchasers, below
  - Railroad cars, **4:30**
  - Refusal, **4:62**
  - Resales to nonresidents
    - Generally, **4:52 to 4:60**
    - Binding subscription agreements, **4:57**
    - Busch v. Carpenter, **4:54**
    - Different issuers, substitution of securities before issue comes to rest, **4:60**
    - Installment agreements, **4:56**
    - Investment intent, **4:53**
    - Outside Rule 147, **4:52 to 4:54**
    - Rule 147(e), generally, **4:55 to 4:60**
    - Same issuer, substitution of securities before issue comes to rest, **4:59**
    - Substitution of securities before issue comes to rest, **4:58 to 4:60**
  - Residence of offerees and purchasers
    - Generally, **4:39 to 4:51**
    - Business entities, Subsection (d)(1), **4:46**
    - Corporations and business associations, **4:42**
    - Fictional business entities, Subsection (d)(3), **4:48**
    - Foreign investors, **4:41**
    - Individuals, **4:40, 4:41, 4:47**
    - Installment sales, **4:51**
    - Non-resident custodian or trustee, **4:49**
    - Offers, form of, **4:50**
    - Outside Rule 147, generally, **4:39 to 4:51**
    - Partnerships, **4:43**
    - Rule 147(d), generally, **4:45 to 4:51**
    - Traditional offerings, **4:40**
    - Trusts, **4:44**
    - Resident and nonresident affiliates, **4:18, 4:19**
    - Rest of issues, **4:58 to 4:60**
    - Rule 147, **4:6**
    - Rule 147A
      - Generally, **4:6**
      - Exemption, **4:74**

<b>INTRASTATE OFFERINGS UNDER SECTION 3(A)(11) AND RULE 147A—Cont'd</b>	<b>INVESTMENT COMPANY—Cont'd</b>
Rule 147A—Cont'd	Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, <b>7:205</b>
Requirements, <b>4:76</b>	Private resales, Rule 144A, <b>10A:9 to 10A:11, 10A:33, 10A:57</b>
Restrictions, <b>4:75</b>	
Rule 147(c)(1), <b>4:21</b>	<b>INVESTMENT EXPERIENCE</b>
Rule 147(g), <b>4:11, 4:12</b>	Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), <b>11:68</b>
Safe harbor rules, <b>4:1</b>	<b>INVESTMENT INTENT</b>
Salespeople and dealers, <b>4:64</b>	Intrastate offerings under Section 3(a)(11), <b>4:53</b>
Same issuer, substitution of securities before issue comes to rest, <b>4:59</b>	Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), <b>11:159</b>
Secondary offerings, <b>4:8, 4:9</b>	<b>INVESTOR</b>
Shipping and marine ventures, <b>4:29</b>	<b>Accredited Investors</b> (this index)
Simultaneous primary and secondary offerings, <b>4:9</b>	Dealers' exemption, Section 4(a)(3), investors in same household, <b>12:24</b>
Single business enterprise, <b>4:18 to 4:20</b>	Intrastate offerings under Section 3(a)(11), <b>4:41</b>
Single certificate, <b>4:63</b>	<b>Limited Offering Exemptions, Regulation D</b> (this index)
Staff interpretations. Doing business, above State Securities Law, <b>4:4</b>	Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), <b>11:185</b>
Subscription agreements, <b>4:57</b>	Private resales, Rule 144A, <b>10A:54</b>
Substitution, <b>4:58 to 4:60</b>	<b>INVESTOR RELATIONS FIRMS</b>
Testing premises, <b>4:68 to 4:71</b>	Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), <b>2:65</b>
Total assets, Subsection (c)(2)(ii), <b>4:36</b>	<b>ISSUANCE</b>
Traditional offerings, <b>4:40</b>	Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, <b>7:80</b>
Transactions subject to exemption, <b>4:6</b>	<b>ISSUER</b>
Transfer agent, <b>4:17</b>	Brokers' special exemption, Section 4(a)(4), <b>13:18, 13:31</b>
Trusts and trustees, <b>4:15, 4:44, 4:49</b>	<b>Extraterritorial Application of Registration         Requirements, Regulation S</b> (this index)
Underwriters, <b>4:7, 4:16</b>	<b>Intrastate Offerings Under Section 3(a)(11)         and Rule 147A</b> (this index)
<b>INTRODUCTORY STATEMENTS</b>	Liable persons, Section 12(a)(2), <b>16:86</b>
Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A, <b>6:52</b>	<b>Limited Offering Exemptions, Regulation D</b> (this index)
<b>INVESTIGATION</b>	<b>Mini-Registration Under Section 3(b), Regula-         tion A</b> (this index)
Cooperation in SEC Enforcement Investigations, <b>16:2</b>	<b>Nonpublic Offerings</b> (this index)
Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A, <b>6:105</b>	Private resales, Rule 144A, <b>10A:50 to 10A:53</b>
Reorganization with court or agency approval under Section 3(a)(10), <b>3:18</b>	<b>Recapitalizations</b> (this index)
Sanctions, <b>16:8, 16:9</b>	<b>Reorganization</b> (this index)
<b>INVESTMENT</b>	Rescinded Rule 235 § 3(b), <b>1:47</b>
Dealers' exemption, Section 4(a)(3), <b>12:31</b>	<b>Rescinded Rule 240 § 3(b)</b> (this index)
Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), <b>11:176</b>	<b>Rescinded Rule 242 § 3(b)</b> (this index)
Section 3(b) and 3(c), <b>8:39 to 8:42</b>	Responses, exempted transactions, <b>1:2</b>
<b>INVESTMENT ACT</b>	<b>Restricted and Controlled Securities</b> (this index)
<b>Limited Offering Exemptions, Regulation D</b> (this index)	<b>Routine Trading Under Section 4(a)(1)</b> (this index)
<b>INVESTMENT BANKERS AND DEALERS</b>	Section 3(b) and 3(c), <b>8:8, 8:18 to 8:20, 8:34,         8:36</b>
Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), <b>9:40</b>	SEC v. Ralston Purina Co., <b>11:15</b>
<b>INVESTMENT COMPANY</b>	<b>Seller</b> (this index)
Dealers' exemption, Section 4(a)(3), <b>12:23</b>	<b>JUDICIAL ATTITUDE</b>
Intrastate offerings under Section 3(a)(11), <b>4:32</b>	Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), <b>11:43</b>
Limited offering exemptions, <b>7:180</b>	

**JUDICIAL CONSTRUCTION AND INTERPRETATION**  
Dealers' exemption, Section 4(a)(3), **12:12**  
Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:227**  
Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:12**, **11:106**  
Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:72**  
Violations  
    Section 12(a)(1), **16:64**  
    Section 12(a)(2), **16:98**

**JUDICIAL DOCTRINE**  
Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:52**, **9:53**

**JUDICIAL HEARING**  
**Reorganization** (this index)

**JUDICIAL OPINION**  
Rescinded Rule 235 § 3(b), **1:49**

**JUDICIAL REVIEW**  
See also **Appeal and Review** (this index)  
Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:114**  
Reorganization with court or agency approval under Section 3(a)(10), **3:55**, **3:64**

**JURISDICTIONAL CONNECTION**  
Section 12(a)(1) violations, **16:50**  
Section 12(a)(2) violations, **16:96**

**JURISDICTIONAL MEANS**  
Section 12(a)(1) violations, **16:49**  
Section 12(a)(2) violations, **16:95**

**JUSTIFIABLE RELIANCE**  
Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:201**

**KNOWLEDGE**  
**Notice and Knowledge** (this index)

**LANDOWNERS' ROYALTY INTERESTS**  
Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:11**

**LEAKAGE PROVISION**  
**Routine Trading Under Section 4(a)(1)** (this index)

**LEASE**  
Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:7**

**LEGAL FORM**  
Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), **2:27**

**LEGAL INTEREST**  
Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144  
Transfers of both legal and beneficial interests, **10:99**  
Transfers of legal interest only, **10:100** to **10:104**

**LEGENDS**  
Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:167**  
Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:160**, **11:163**  
Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:251**

**LEGISLATION**  
Recent offerings, affecting securities, **1:4**

**LENDER**  
See also **Banks and Banking** (this index)  
Liable persons, Section 12(a)(2), **16:91**  
Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:127**

**LETTERS, INTERPRETATIVE**  
Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:43**  
Source materials, **1:22**

**LETTERS, NO-ACTION**  
Source materials, **1:23**

**LEVERAGED LEASE FINANCING**  
Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:7**

**LIABILITY**  
Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:109**  
Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:5**

**LIMITATION OF ACTIONS**  
Section 12(a)(1) violations, **16:52** to **16:55**  
Section 12(a)(2) violations, **16:112** to **16:114**

**LIMITATIONS AND RESTRICTIONS**  
Accredited investors, **14:2**, **14:3**  
Brokers' special exemption, Section 4(a)(4), **13:11**  
Covenants, **10:118**  
**Extraterritorial Application of Registration Requirements, Regulation S** (this index)  
Legends, **7:167**  
**Limited Offering Exemptions, Regulation D** (this index)  
Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A, **6:21** to **6:23**  
**Nonpublic Offerings** (this index)  
Private resales, Rule 144A, **10A:11**  
Rescinded Rule 148, **1:80**  
Rescinded Rule 235 § 3(b), **1:47**  
**Rescinded Rule 237 § 3(b)** (this index)  
**Rescinded Rule 242 § 3(b)** (this index)  
**Restricted and Controlled Securities** (this index)  
**Routine Trading Under Section 4(a)(1)** (this index)  
**Section 3(b) and 3(c)** (this index)  
Securities. **Restricted Securities** (this index)

**LIMITATIONS AND RESTRICTIONS—Cont'd**  
**Seller (this index)****LIMITED NUMBER OF PURCHASERS**  
Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D—charts, **App 7H****LIMITED OFFERING EXEMPTIONS,  
REGULATION D**Generally, **7:1 et seq., 7:50.50**ABA task force guidelines for single business enterprise, **7:113**A/B exchange offers, **7:259**Aborted registration, **7:111**Aborted transaction, **7:174**

Accredited investors

Common definitions, Rule 501, below

Evaluation, **7:290, 7:305 to 7:308**Exemption, generally, **7:277, App 7J**General conditions, **7:117, 7:132**Rule 506(c)(2), **7:231**SEC revised definition, **7:1.50**SEC's view, **7:14**Accredited investors, Rule 506(c)(2), **7:231**Acknowledgment by purchaser, **7:98**Adopted and proposed revisions, **7:50.50**Advertising and advertisements, **7:140 to 7:143, 7:150**Advice, **7:202**

Affiliates and nonaffiliates

Common definitions, Rule 501, **7:78**

§ D5 million, exemption for limited offers and sales not exceeding, Rule 505 (former), below

General conditions, below

Nonaffiliates, **7:142, 7:143, 7:151 to 7:153**Agents and agency, **7:158, 7:285, App 7L**Aggregate offering price, **7:194, 7:195**1989 and 1992 amendment programs, **7:28**Common definitions, Rule 501, **7:79 to 7:82**§ D5 million, exemption for limited offers and sales not exceeding, Rule 505 (former), **7:208**Aggregate sales price, **7:6, 7:13**All or none offerings, **7:47**

Amendments. Changes, modifications, and amendments, below

Amount, increase in dollar amount, **7:289**Appeal and review, **7:114**Assets, **7:67**Avoidance of disqualification, **7:215**Avoidance of disqualification, Rule 506, offers and sales without regard to dollar amount, **7:236**Bad actor disqualification provisions, **7:202.10**Beneficial owners, **7:8, 7:276**Blank check companies, exclusion of, **7:181****LIMITED OFFERING EXEMPTIONS,  
REGULATION D—Cont'd**Both accredited and nonaccredited investors, **7:132**Brokerage commissions, **7:7**Broker-dealer and agent registration, **7:285, App 7L**Business combination, **7:83, 7:131, 7:194, 7:222**Business development companies, **7:57 et seq.**

Calculation

Common definitions, Rule 501, below

§ D5 million, exemption for sales not exceeding, Rule 504, **7:195**1989 and 1992 amendment programs, **7:29**Capital, raising, **7:221**Ceiling, deductions from, **7:198**Certificates, **7:93, 7:94**

Challenges. Nonpublic offerings, below

Changes, modifications, and amendments

Initial filing of notice of sales, Rule 503, **7:175**

1989 and 1992 amendment programs, below

Resale restrictions, **7:297**

Charts

Broker-dealer registration, **App 7L**Businesses in organizational stage, **App 7E**Closely held issuers (without regard to place of organization), **App 7G**Commission's comparative chart, **7:50**Comparative chart of Securities Act limited offering exemptions, **7:50, App 7A**Domestically organized issuers, **App 7F**Limited number of purchasers, exemption based on, **App 7H**Rule 506: after NSMIA, exemption based on, **App 7I**Rule 506: prior to NSMIA, explicit efforts to coordinate directly with Rule 506, **App 7K**State regulation of exempted transactions under Rules 504 and Rule 505 (former), **App 7C**Citizenship, **7:89**Closed end company, **7:59**Closely held issuers (without regard to place of organization), **App 7G**Coincident offers and sales to foreign investors, **7:48**Commissions, **7:7, 7:292**

Common definitions, Rule 501

Generally, **7:36, 7:51 to 7:99**

Accredited investor, Rule 501(a)

Generally, **7:52 to 7:77**Accredited natural persons, proposed Rule 509, **7:77**Directors, executive officers, and general partners, Rule 501(a)(4), **7:70**

**LIMITED OFFERING EXEMPTIONS,  
REGULATION D—Cont'd**

Common definitions, Rule 501—Cont'd  
 Accredited investor, Rule 501(a)—Cont'd  
 Eligible entities, Rule 501(a)(8), **7:75**  
 Elimination of \$150,000 purchaser accreditation standard, **7:54**  
 Equity owners, Rule 501(a)(8), **7:76**  
 For-profit organizations, **7:65, 7:69**  
 Identifying the "person," **7:53**  
 Institutional investors, Rule 501(a)(1), **7:56**  
 Investment Act, defined under. Private business development companies, Rule 501(a)(2), above this subgroup  
 Natural persons, below  
 Private business development companies, Rule 501(a)(2)  
 Generally, **7:57 to 7:64**  
 Closed end company, **7:59**  
 Election under Section 54(a), **7:62**  
 Investment Advisers Act, defined under, **7:63**  
 Investment Company Act, defined under, generally, **7:58 to 7:62**  
 Limitations on investments, Sections 55(a)(1)-55(a)(3), **7:60**  
 Significant managerial assistance, **7:61**  
 Redesignations, **7:55**  
 Reform and reorganization, **7:54, 7:55**  
 Rule 501(a)(8), **7:74 to 7:76**  
 Tax-exempt organizations, **7:65 to 7:68**  
 Total assets in excess of \$5 million, tax-exempt organizations, **7:67**  
 Trusts, Rule 501(a)(7), **7:73**  
 Accredited natural persons, proposed Rule 509, **7:77**  
 Affiliate, Rule 501(b), **7:78**  
 Aggregate offering price, Rule 501(c), **7:79 to 7:82**  
 Business combination, Rule 501(d), **7:83**  
 Calculation of number of purchasers, Rule 501(e)  
 Generally, **7:84 to 7:89**  
 Foreign citizens or residents, **7:89**  
 Noncontributory employee benefit plans, **7:88**  
 Rule 501(e)(1), **7:85**  
 Rule 501(e)(2), **7:86, 7:87**  
 Equipment trust certificates, **7:93, 7:94**  
 Executive officer, Rule 501(f), **7:90**  
 Investment Act, defined under. Accredited investor, Rule 501(a), above this group  
 Investor. Accredited investor, Rule 501(a), above this group  
 Issuer, Rule 501(g), **7:90.50 to 7:94**  
 Limited partnerships, **7:92**

**LIMITED OFFERING EXEMPTIONS,  
REGULATION D—Cont'd**

Common definitions, Rule 501—Cont'd  
 Number of purchasers. Calculation of number of purchasers, Rule 501(e), above this group  
 Payments for issuance of securities, **7:80**  
 Private business development companies, Rule 501(a)(2). Accredited investor, Rule 501(a), above this group  
 Purchaser representative  
 Generally, **7:95 to 7:99**  
 Acknowledgment by purchaser, **7:98**  
 Disclosure statement, **7:99**  
 Independence, **7:96**  
 Sophistication, **7:97**  
 Purchasers. Calculation of number of purchasers, Rule 501(e), above this group  
 Redesignation of Rules 501(g) and (h) as Rules 501(h) and 501(i), **7:101**  
 Representative. Purchaser representative, above this group  
 Rule 501(e). Calculation of number of purchasers, Rule 501(e), above this group  
 Structured finance product, proposed Rule 501(i), **7:100**  
 Sum of consideration, determining, **7:81**  
 Valuation of noncash consideration, **7:82**  
 Communications. General conditions, below  
 Comparative chart of Securities Act limited offering exemptions, **App 7A**  
 Complaining party, violation not intended for protection of, **7:242**  
 Completed offerings, **7:309 to 7:311**  
 Conceptual framework, advertisements by third person, **7:142**  
 Conditioning of market by issuer, **7:157**  
 Conditions  
 § D5 million, exemption for limited offers and sales not exceeding, Rule 505 (former), **7:206**  
 § D5 million, exemption for sales not exceeding, Rule 504, below  
 General conditions, below  
 Rule 506, offers and sales without regard to dollar amount, **7:224**  
 Specific conditions  
 § D5 million, exemption for limited offers and sales not exceeding, Rule 505 (former), below  
 § D5 million, exemption for sales not exceeding, Rule 504, below  
 Consideration, **7:81, 7:82**  
 Corporations  
 Charts, businesses in organizational stage, **App 7E**  
 Offerings by, **7:310**

**LIMITED OFFERING EXEMPTIONS,  
REGULATION D—Cont'd**

Covered persons, Rule 506, offers and sales without regard to dollar amount, **7:234**

Deductions, **7:197, 7:198**

Definitions

- Common definitions, Rule 501, below
- Offering, **7:199**

Demonstrating restricted nature of securities sold, **7:32**

Directors and officers, **7:70**

Disclosure

- Common definitions, Rule 501, **7:99**
- Evaluation, **7:295**
- General conditions, below
- SEC's view, **7:12, 7:17**

Disqualification provision, Rule 504(b)(3), effective January 20, 2017, **7:202.05**

Disqualifying events, Rule 506, offers and sales without regard to dollar amount, **7:235**

Dollar amount, **7:289**

Domestically organized issuers, charts, **App 7F**

Effective dates, **7:42**

Election under Section 54(a), **7:62**

Electronic filing of notice of sales, Rule 503, **7:169**

Eligible entities, Rule 501(a)(8), **7:75**

Eligible issuers

- Evaluation, **7:288**
- § D5 million, exemption for limited offers and sales not exceeding, Rule 505 (former), **7:204, 7:205**
- § D5 million, exemption for sales not exceeding, Rule 504, **7:178 to 7:202.10**
- Rule 506, offers and sales without regard to dollar amount, **7:219 to 7:222**

Eliminations

- Filing requirement, **7:296**
- § D150,000 purchaser accreditation standard, **7:54**
- “Securities of issuer” concept, **7:291**

Employee benefit plan, **7:88, 7:105 to 7:108**

Employees, State Blue Sky Laws, **7:285**

Employee stock option plan, **7:173**

Equipment trust certificates, **7:93, 7:94**

Equity lines, **7:258**

Equity owners, Rule 501(a)(8), **7:76**

Establishing business relationship, **7:147 to 7:149**

Establishing substantive relationship, **7:153**

Evaluation

- Generally, **7:286 to 7:309**
- Accredited investor category, broadening of, **7:290**
- Commissions, authorization of, **7:292**
- Eliminate filing requirement, **7:296**

**LIMITED OFFERING EXEMPTIONS,  
REGULATION D—Cont'd**

Evaluation—Cont'd

- Elimination of “securities of issuer” concept, **7:291**
- Federal-state exemptions, coordination of, **7:293**
- Increase in dollar amount, **7:289**
- Modify resale restrictions, **7:297**
- More issuers eligible, **7:288**
- New directions, generally, **7:287 to 7:293**
- Rejected proposals, generally, **7:294 to 7:298**
- Risk of liability, reduction of, **7:298**
- Rule 508, **7:247, 7:248**
- SEC staff analysis
- Generally, **7:299**
- Accredited investor concept, **7:305 to 7:308**
- Corporations, offerings by, **7:310**
- Expenses of completed offerings, **7:309 to 7:311**
- Industry group, **7:303**
- Nonaccredited investors, **7:307, 7:308**
- Partnerships, offerings by, **7:311**
- Preferred exemptions, **7:300**
- Size of offerings, **7:301**
- Type of business organization, **7:302**
- Type of security offered, **7:304**
- Simplify disclosure, **7:295**
- Events causing disqualification, **7:213, 7:214**
- Evidence, **7:158, 7:159**
- Exceptions, **7:184**
- Exchange offers, **7:259**
- Exclusion from Rule 508, **7:244**
- Executive officer, Rule 501(f), **7:90**
- Exempt offering regime, 2020, **7:2**
- Exhibits, **7:128**
- Expenses of completed offerings, **7:309 to 7:311**
- Federal and state regulation, relationship between, **7:22 to 7:25**
- Federal preemption, **7:237, 7:280**
- Federal-state coordination, **7:216**
- Federal-state exemptions, coordination of, **7:293**
- Federal-state registration exemptions, **7:264**
- Filing of notice of sales, Rule 503
- Generally, **7:36, 7:168 to 7:177**
- Aborted transaction, **7:174**
- Electronic filing, **7:169**
- Employee stock option plan, **7:173**
- Form D, **7:169**
- Minimum-maximum timing, **7:172**
- SEC's decision to update Form D, **7:169**
- Timing, **7:170 to 7:175**
- Financial statement information, **7:122 to 7:125**
- § D500,000 maximum, Rule 504(b)(2), pre-1992 special \$500,000 maximum, **7:200**

**LIMITED OFFERING EXEMPTIONS, REGULATION D—Cont'd**

§ D5 million, accredited investor, Rule 501(a), total assets in excess of \$5 million, tax-exempt organizations, **7:67**

§ D5 million, exemption for limited offers and sales not exceeding, Rule 505 (former) Generally, **7:203 to 7:217**

Affiliated issuer. Disqualifications, below this group

Disqualifications

Generally, **7:210, 7:211**

Avoidance of disqualification, **7:215**

Covered persons, **7:212**

Events causing disqualification, **7:213, 7:214**

Eligible issuers, Rule 505 (former), **7:204, 7:205**

Federal-state coordination, **7:216**

General conditions, Rule 505(b)(1) (former), **7:206**

Issuer

Disqualifications, above this group

Eligible issuers, **7:204, 7:205**

NASAA uniform limited offering exemption, **7:217**

Predecessors. Disqualifications, above this group

Rescinded Rule 505 (former) effective May 22, 2017, **7:203**

Small business investment companies, **7:205**

Specific conditions, Rule 505(b)(2) (former)

Generally, **7:207 to 7:211**

Aggregate offering price, limitation on, **7:208**

Disqualifications, above this group

Number of purchasers, limitation on, **7:209**

Purchasers, limitation on number of, **7:209**

§ D5 million, exemption for sales not exceeding, Rule 504

Generally, **7:178 to 7:202.10**

Blank check companies, exclusion of, **7:181**

Conditions. General conditions, Rule 504(b)(1), below this group

Eligible issuers, Rule 504, **7:179 to 7:181**

General conditions, Rule 504(b)(1)

Generally, **7:182 et seq.**

Investment companies, exclusion of, **7:180**

Maximum offering price, Rule 504(b)(2)

Generally, **7:191 et seq.**

Aggregate offering price, applicable period of time for calculating, **7:195**

Specific condition

Generally, **7:191 et seq.**

Maximum offering price, Rule 504(b)(2), above this group

**LIMITED OFFERING EXEMPTIONS, REGULATION D—Cont'd**

Foreign citizens or residents, **7:89**

Foreign investors, **7:48**

Foreign offerees, **7:136**

Foreign offerings, **7:115**

Foreign private issuers, **7:126**

Form D, **7:169, App 7B**

For-profit organizations, **7:65, 7:69**

Free shares, **7:251**

General conditions

Generally, **7:102 to 7:167**

Affiliate as offeror. Manner of offering, limitation on, Rule 502(c), below this group

Communications. Manner of offering, limitation on, Rule 502(c), below this group

Disclosure. Information requirements, Rule 502(b), below this group

§ D5 million, exemption for limited offers and sales not exceeding, Rule 505 (former), **7:206**

§ D5 million, exemption for sales not exceeding, Rule 504, below

Information requirements, Rule 502(b)

Generally, **7:116 to 7:132**

Accredited investors only, **7:117**

Both accredited and nonaccredited investors, **7:132**

Disclosure. Written disclosure, below this group

Foreign private issuers, written disclosure, **7:126**

Nonaccredited investors only

Generally, **7:118 to 7:131**

Disclosure of resale limitations, **7:130**

Exhibits, **7:128**

Opportunity for questions and answers, **7:129**

Special disclosure in business combinations, **7:131**

Written disclosure, below this subgroup

Reporting requirements. Written disclosure, below this subgroup

Written disclosure

Generally, **7:119 to 7:127**

Financial statement information, **7:122 to 7:125**

Foreign private issuers, **7:126**

Foreign private issuers \$7.5 million, offerings over, **7:125**

Nonfinancial statement information, **7:121**

Reporting requirements, generally, **7:120 to 7:127**

§ D7.5 million, offerings over, **7:125**

§ D7.5 million, offerings up to, **7:124**

**LIMITED OFFERING EXEMPTIONS,  
REGULATION D—Cont'd**

General conditions—Cont'd  
 Information requirements, Rule 502(b)  
 —Cont'd  
 Written disclosure—Cont'd  
 § D2 million, offerings up to, **7:123**  
 Integration, Rule 502(a)  
 Generally, **7:103 to 7:115**  
 ABA task force guidelines for single business enterprise, **7:113**  
 Judicial review of single business enterprise, **7:114**  
 Part of offering concept, **7:103**  
 Rule 152, **7:110**  
 Safe Harbor provisions in operation  
 Generally, **7:104 to 7:108**  
 Limited exception, **7:106**  
 Sales under employee benefit plan, **7:105 to 7:108**  
 Threat of integration, **7:108**  
 Sales following aborted registered offering, **7:111**  
 SEC staff view of single business enterprise, **7:112**  
 Simultaneous foreign offerings, **7:115**  
 Single business enterprise, **7:112 to 7:114**  
 Traditional integration factors, **7:109 et seq.**, **7:110**  
 Manner of offering, limitation on, Rule 502(c)  
 Generally, **7:133 to 7:165**  
 Adoption of new exemption, suggested reform, **7:164**  
 Advertisements by third person, **7:140 to 7:143**  
 Affiliates and nonaffiliates  
 Advertisements by third person, **7:140 to 7:143**  
 Nonaffiliates, advertisements by third person, **7:142, 7:143**  
 Offeree and person making communication, relationship between, below this subgroup  
 Analysis framework, **7:134**  
 Ban on general solicitation, lifting of, **7:165**  
 Conceptual framework, advertisements by third person, **7:142**  
 Foreign offerees, **7:136**  
 Issuer  
 Communications by, **7:140**  
 Relationship between issuer and person making communication, **7:140 to 7:143**  
 Relationship between person making communication and issuer and offeree, **7:155**  
 Number of persons solicited, **7:135**

**LIMITED OFFERING EXEMPTIONS,  
REGULATION D—Cont'd**

General conditions—Cont'd  
 Manner of offering, limitation on, Rule 502(c)  
 —Cont'd  
 Offeree and person making communication, relationship between  
 Generally, **7:144 to 7:154**  
 Affiliate as offeror, generally, **7:146 to 7:150**  
 Establishing business relationship, **7:147 to 7:149**  
 Establishing substantive relationship, **7:153**  
 Institutional advertising, **7:150**  
 Issuer as offeror, **7:145**  
 Nonaffiliate as offeror, **7:151 to 7:153**  
 Preexisting relationship, **7:149**  
 Preexisting substantive relationship, opposition to requirement of, **7:154**  
 Recruitment programs, **7:152**  
 Substantive relationship, **7:148, 7:154**  
 Reforms (suggested), **7:163 to 7:165**  
 Rule 135c notice, **7:138**  
 Rule 135e offshore communications, **7:139**  
 Staff interpretations, advertisements by third person, **7:143**  
 Timing factor  
 Generally, **7:156 to 7:160**  
 Conditioning of market by issuer, **7:157**  
 Evidence, **7:158, 7:159**  
 Offerees, proof of substantive relationship with, **7:159**  
 Preexisting relationship, indicator of, **7:160**  
 Solicitation, subject matter of, **7:161**  
 Twilight Zone in Rule 506 offerings, **7:162 to 7:165**  
 Nonaccredited investors only. Information requirements, Rule 502(b), above this group  
 Offeree and person making communication, relationship between. Manner of offering, limitation on, Rule 502(c), above this group  
 Reporting requirements. Information requirements, Rule 502(b), above this group  
 Resale, limitations on, Rule 502(d), **7:166, 7:167**  
 Restrictive legends, removal of, **7:167**  
 Rule 502(a). Integration, Rule 502(a), above this group  
 Rule 502(b). Information requirements, Rule 502(b), above this group  
 Rule 502(c). Manner of offering, limitation on, Rule 502(c), above this group

**LIMITED OFFERING EXEMPTIONS, REGULATION D—Cont'd**

General conditions—Cont'd

- Rule 506(b), offers and sales without regard to dollar amount, **7:224**
- Rule 506(c), offers and sales without regard to dollar amount, **7:230**
- Safe Harbor provisions in operation. Integration, Rule 502(a), below this group
- Timing factor. Manner of offering, limitation on, Rule 502(c), above this group
- Written disclosure. Information requirements, Rule 502(b), above this group
- General conditions, Rule 504(b)(1)
- 1982 adoption, generally, **7:186**
- 1999-January 2017, prior versions, generally, **7:184.50**
- Offering made exclusively in states where securities were registered, **7:188 to 7:190, 7:203**
- Offering made in one or more states where securities were not registered, **7:187, 7:203**
- Prior versions, **7:184.50, 7:185, 7:186**
- General conditions, Rule 504(b)(2)
- January 20, 2017, operation of rule, **7:201**
- General partners, **7:70**
- Good faith, **7:249**
- Gypsy swaps, **7:252**
- Identifying the "person," **7:53**
- Impact of Rule 506(d), **7:202.10**
- Income test, **7:72**
- Increase in dollar amount, **7:289**
- Independence, **7:96**
- Industry group, **7:303**
- Information requirements
  - Generally, **7:31**
  - General conditions, above
- Initial filing of notice of sales, Rule 503, **7:171**
- Institutional advertising, **7:150**
- Institutional investors, Rule 501(a)(1), **7:56**
- Integration, Rule 502(a). General conditions, above
- Internet, **7:262**
- Interpretations, **7:143, 7:227**
- Interpretative letters and releases, **7:43**
- Investment Act, defined under. Common definitions, Rule 501, above
- Investment Advisers Act, defined under, **7:63**
- Investment company, **7:180, 7:205**
- Investment Company Act, significant managerial assistance, **7:61**
- Investors
  - Coincident offers and sales to foreign investors, **7:48**
  - Common definitions, Rule 501, below

**LIMITED OFFERING EXEMPTIONS, REGULATION D—Cont'd**

Investors—Cont'd

- Evaluation, **7:290, 7:305 to 7:308**
- General conditions, **7:117**
- SEC's view, **7:14**
- Issuance of securities, payments for, **7:80**
- Issuer
  - Common definitions, Rule 501, **7:90.50 to 7:94**
  - Evaluation, **7:288, 7:291**
  - § D5 million, exemption for limited offers and sales not exceeding, Rule 505 (former), above
  - § D5 million, exemption for sales not exceeding, Rule 504, **7:179 to 7:181**
  - General conditions, manner of offering, limitation on, Rule 502(c), **7:140 to 7:143, 7:145, 7:155, 7:157**
  - Information requirements, Rule 502(b), **7:126, 7:127**
  - Rule 506, offers and sales without regard to dollar amount, **7:219 to 7:222**
  - Rule 508, **7:249**
  - SEC's view, **7:11**
  - State Blue Sky Laws, **7:285**
  - Judicial interpretation, **7:227**
  - Judicial review of single business enterprise, **7:114**
  - Legends, **7:167**
  - Letters, interpretative letters and releases, **7:43**
  - Limited number of purchasers, exemption based on, **App 7H**
  - Limited partnerships, **7:92**
  - Limited public offerings, **7:260**
  - Manner of offering, not subject to limitation, Rule 506(c)
    - Rule 506, offers and sales without regard to dollar amount, **7:228 to 7:236**
  - Margin requirements, **7:46**
  - Market by issuer, conditioning of, **7:157**
  - Maximum
    - Filing of notice of sales, Rule 503, **7:172**
    - § D5 million, exemption for sales not exceeding, Rule 504, below
  - Maximum offering price, Rule 504(b)(2)
    - Aggregate offering price, limitation on, **7:194**
    - Business combinations, **7:194**
    - Deductions, **7:197, 7:198**
    - Integration concerns, **7:199**
    - Offering defined, **7:199**
  - Minimum-maximum timing, **7:172**
  - Multiple states, **7:187**
  - NASAA uniform limited offering exemption, **7:217**

**LIMITED OFFERING EXEMPTIONS,  
REGULATION D—Cont'd**

Natural persons, accredited investor, Rule 501(a)  
 § D1 million net worth test, Rule 501(a)(5),  
**7:71**  
 Income test, Rule 501(a)(6), **7:72**  
 Proposed Rule 509, **7:77**  
 Net worth, **7:71**  
 1989 and 1992 amendment programs  
 Generally, **7:26 to 7:34**  
 Aggregate offering price, **7:28**  
 Calculation of number of purchasers, **7:29**  
 Demonstrating restricted nature of securities  
 sold, **7:32**  
 Information requirements, **7:31**  
 Purchaser representative, **7:30**  
 Rule 501(a) changes, **7:27**  
 Rule 504 revisions, **7:33**  
 Rule 505 (former) revisions, **7:33**  
 Rule 506 revisions, **7:33**  
 Rule 507, **7:34**  
 Rule 508, **7:34**  
 1992 amendments. 1989 and 1992 amendment  
 programs, above  
 Nonaccredited investors, **7:132, 7:307, 7:308**  
 Nonaccredited investors only. General conditions,  
 above  
 Noncash consideration, **7:82**  
 Noncontributory employee benefit plans, **7:88**  
 Nonfinancial statement information, **7:121**  
 Nonpublic offerings  
 Generally, **7:250 to 7:262**  
 Challenges, regulatory, generally, **7:250 to  
 7:262**  
 Free shares, **7:251**  
 Gypsy swaps, **7:252**  
 Internet, **7:262**  
 Need for exemption, **7:251, 7:252**  
 Post-filing transactions, **7:255**  
 Pre-filing transactions, **7:254**  
 Private transactions in contemplation of public  
 offering, **7:253 to 7:255**  
 Regulatory challenges, generally, **7:250 to  
 7:262**  
 Restructured transactions  
 Generally, **7:256 to 7:261**  
 A/B exchange offers, **7:259**  
 Limited public offerings, **7:260**  
 PIPE transactions, **7:257**  
 Private equity lines, **7:258**  
 Private to public, **7:256 to 7:259**  
 Public to private, **7:260, 7:261**  
 Withdrawn registrations, **7:261**  
 Notice  
 Filing of notice of sales, Rule 503, above  
 General conditions, **7:138**

**LIMITED OFFERING EXEMPTIONS,  
REGULATION D—Cont'd**

NSMIA  
 Charts  
 After NSMIA, exemption based on Rule  
**506, App 7I**  
 Prior to NSMIA, explicit efforts to coordinate  
 directly with Rule 506, **App 7K**  
 State Blue Sky Laws, Rule 506 transactions  
 Generally, **7:280**  
 Prior to NSMIA, **7:281 to 7:284**  
 Number of owners, **7:276**  
 Number of persons solicited, **7:135**  
 Number of purchasers  
 Common definitions, Rule 501, above  
 § D5 million, exemption for limited offers and  
 sales not exceeding, Rule 505 (former),  
**7:209**  
 Rule 506, offers and sales without regard to  
 dollar amount, **7:225**  
 Offeree and person making communication, relationship  
 between. General conditions, above  
 Offering and resales, manner of, **7:9**  
 Offering price, **7:28, 7:79 to 7:82**  
 Officers and directors, **7:70, 7:90**  
 Offshore communications, **7:139**  
 § D150,000 purchaser accreditation standard,  
**7:54**  
 § D1 million net worth test, Rule 501(a)(5), **7:71**  
 Ownership, **7:8, 7:76, 7:276**  
 Parties, **7:242**  
 Partnerships, **7:70, 7:92, 7:311**  
 Part of offering concept, **7:103**  
 Payments for issuance of securities, **7:80**  
 Person, identifying, **7:53**  
 PIPE transactions, **7:257**  
 Post-filing transactions, **7:255**  
 Pre-1992 special \$500,000 maximum, **7:200**  
 Pre-1992 specific condition, **7:202**  
 Predecessors. \$5 million, exemption for limited  
 offers and sales not exceeding, Rule 505  
 (former), above  
 Preemption, **7:237, 7:280**  
 Preexisting relationship, **7:149, 7:154, 7:160**  
 Preferred exemptions, **7:300**  
 Pre-filing transactions, **7:254**  
 Preliminary notes of Regulation D, **7:35**  
 Price. Aggregate offering price, above  
 Prior exemptions. Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC), below  
 Private business development companies, Rule  
 501(a)(2). Common definitions, Rule 501,  
 above  
 Private equity lines, **7:258**  
 Private offerings  
 Private to public, **7:256 to 7:259**

**LIMITED OFFERING EXEMPTIONS, REGULATION D—Cont'd**

Private offerings—Cont'd

- Public to private, **7:260, 7:261**
- State Blue Sky Laws, Rule 505 (former) transactions, **7:275**

Private transactions in contemplation of public offering, **7:253 to 7:255**

Public offerings

- Private transactions in contemplation of public offering, **7:253 to 7:255**

Restructured transactions

- Limited public offerings, **7:260**
- Private to public, **7:256 to 7:259**
- Public to private, **7:260, 7:261**

Purchaser

- Common definitions, Rule 501, above
- § D5 million, exemption for limited offers and sales not exceeding, Rule 505 (former), **7:209**
- 1989 and 1992 amendment programs, **7:29**
- Rule 506, offers and sales without regard to dollar amount, **7:225, 7:226**
- Sec's view, **7:18**
- State Blue Sky Laws, **7:274**

Purchaser representative

- Common definitions, Rule 501, above
- 1989 and 1992 amendment programs, **7:30**

Qualifications and disqualifications

- Disqualification, removal of, Rule 507, **7:240**
- § D5 million, exemption for limited offers and sales not exceeding, Rule 505 (former), above
- Possibility of disqualification, Rule 507, **7:239**

Raising capital, **7:221**

Reasonable attempt, **7:249**

Records and recording

- Evaluation, **7:296**
- Filing of notice of sales, Rule 503, above
- Nonpublic offerings, **7:254, 7:255**

Recruitment programs, **7:152**

Redesignation of Rules 501(g) and (h) as Rules 501(h) and 501(i), **7:101**

Redesignations, **7:55**

Reform and reorganization, **7:54, 7:55, 7:163 to 7:165**

Registration, **7:188 to 7:190**

- General conditions, **7:111**
- Nonpublic offerings, **7:261**
- State Blue Sky Laws, **7:264, 7:278, 7:284, 7:285**

Regulation A, **7:21**

Regulation D, generally, **7:35 to 7:41**

Regulation D stock purchase agreement, **App 7N**

Regulatory challenges. Nonpublic offerings, above

**LIMITED OFFERING EXEMPTIONS, REGULATION D—Cont'd**

Releases, interpretative letters and releases, **7:43**

Relevant amounts, **7:196, 7:197**

Relevant transactions, **7:198**

Removal, **7:167, 7:240**

Reorganization, **7:54, 7:55**

Reports and reporting

- General conditions, above
- SEC's view, **7:19, 7:20**

Representative

- Common definitions, Rule 501, above
- 1989 and 1992 amendment programs, **7:30**

Resale

- Generally, **7:190, 7:202**
- Evaluation, **7:297**
- General conditions, **7:130, 7:166, 7:167**
- Offering made exclusively in states where securities were registered, **7:190, 7:203**
- SEC's view, **7:9**

Residence, **7:89**

Restrictive legends, removal of, **7:167**

Restructured transactions. Nonpublic offerings, above

Revisions. 1989 and 1992 amendment programs, above

Revisions, adopted and proposed, **7:50.50**

Risk of liability, reduction of, **7:298**

Rule 135c notice, **7:138**

Rule 135e offshore communications, **7:139**

Rule 152, **7:110**

Rule 240. Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC), below

Rule 242. Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC), below

Rule 501. Common definitions, Rule 501, above

Rule 501(a)(1), **7:56**

Rule 501(a)(4), **7:70**

Rule 501(a)(5), **7:71**

Rule 501(a)(6), **7:72**

Rule 501(a)(7), **7:73**

Rule 501(a)(8), **7:74 to 7:76**

Rule 501(a) changes, **7:27**

Rule 501(b), **7:78**

Rule 501(c), **7:79 to 7:82**

Rule 501(d), business combination, **7:83**

Rule 501(e). Common definitions, Rule 501, above

Rule 501(e)(1), calculation of number of purchasers, **7:85**

Rule 501(e)(2), calculation of number of purchasers, **7:86, 7:87**

Rule 501(f), executive officer, **7:90**

Rule 501(g), issuer, **7:90.50 to 7:94**

Rule 502, generally, **7:36**

Rule 502(a). General conditions, above

**LIMITED OFFERING EXEMPTIONS,  
REGULATION D—Cont'd**

Rule 502(b). General conditions, above  
 Rule 502(c). General conditions, above  
 Rule 502(d), limitations on resale, **7:166, 7:167**  
 Rule 503. Filing of notice of sales, Rule 503, above  
 Rule 504  
     Generally, **7:37, 7:178 to 7:202.10**  
     Chart—state regulation of exempted transactions under Rules 504 and 505 (former), **App 7C**  
     § D5 million, exemption for sales not exceeding, Rule 504, above  
     Revisions, 1989 and 1992 amendment programs, **7:33**  
     Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC), below  
     State Blue Sky Laws, below  
 Rule 504(b)(1). \$5 million, exemption for sales not exceeding, Rule 504, above  
 Rule 504(b)(2). \$5 million, exemption for sales not exceeding, Rule 504, above  
 Rule 504(b)(3), disqualification provision, effective January 20, 2017, **7:202.05**  
 Rule 505 (former)  
     Generally, **7:38**  
     Charts  
         State regulation of exempted transactions under Rules 504 and 505 (former), **App 7C**  
         § D5 million, exemption for limited offers and sales not exceeding, Rule 505 (former), above  
         Revisions, 1989 and 1992 amendment programs, **7:33**  
         Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC), below  
         State Blue Sky Laws, below  
 Rule 506  
     Generally, **7:39**  
     Charts  
         After NSMIA, exemption based on Rule 506, **App 7I**  
         Prior to NSMIA, explicit efforts to coordinate directly with Rule 506, **App 7K**  
     General conditions, **7:162**  
     Modification of prior exemptions, Rule 146 versus Rule 506, **7:15 to 7:18**  
     Reforms (suggested), **7:163 to 7:165**  
     Revisions, 1989 and 1992 amendment programs, **7:33**  
     SEC's view, **7:25**  
     SPAC subscription agreement, **App 7T**  
     Transactions. State Blue Sky Laws, below

**LIMITED OFFERING EXEMPTIONS,  
REGULATION D—Cont'd**

Rule 506, offers and sales without regard to dollar amount  
     Generally, **7:218 to 7:237**  
     Avoidance of disqualification, **7:236**  
     Bad actor disqualification, **7:202.10, 7:233**  
     Business combinations, **7:222**  
     Covered persons, **7:234**  
     Disqualifying events, **7:235**  
     Eligible issuers and transactions, **7:219 to 7:222**  
     Federal preemption, **7:237**  
     General conditions, Rule 506(b)(1), **7:224**  
     General conditions, Rule 506(c), **7:230**  
     Judicial interpretation, **7:227**  
     Manner of offering, not subject to limitation, Rule 506(c), **7:228 to 7:236**  
     Manner of offerings, limitation on, **7:223**  
     Number of purchasers, limitation on, **7:225**  
     Overview, Rule 506(c), **7:229**  
     Purchasers, **7:225, 7:226**  
     Raising capital, **7:221**  
     Specific conditions, Rule 506(b)(2), **7:225 to 7:227**  
     Specific conditions, Rule 506(c)(2), **7:231**  
     Verification of accredited investor status, **7:232**  
 Rule 506(d), impact of, **7:202.10**  
 Rule 506 purchase agreement, sample, **App 7M**  
 Rule 506 securities purchase agreement with multiple investors, **App 7O**  
 Rule 507  
     Generally, **7:40, 7:238 to 7:249**  
     Disqualification, **7:239, 7:240**  
     1989 and 1992 amendment programs, **7:34**  
 Rule 508  
     Generally, **7:41, 7:238, 7:241 to 7:249**  
     Complaining party, violation not intended for protection of, **7:242**  
     Evaluations, **7:247, 7:248**  
     Exclusion from Rule 508, **7:244**  
     Insignificance, generally, **7:243 to 7:248**  
     Issuer's good faith and reasonable attempt to comply, **7:249**  
     1989 and 1992 amendment programs, **7:34**  
 Safe Harbor provisions in operation. General conditions, above  
 Sales  
     Coincident offers and sales to foreign investors, **7:48**  
     Filing of notice of sales, Rule 503, above  
     § D5 million, exemption for limited offers and sales not exceeding, Rule 505 (former), above  
     § D5 million, exemption for sales not exceeding, Rule 504, above

## LIMITED OFFERING EXEMPTIONS, REGULATION D—Cont'd

Sales—Cont'd

- Rule 506, offers and sales without regard to dollar amount, above
- Sales price. Aggregate sales price, above
- Samples of restrictive legends for securities certificates, **App 7Q**
- SEC Release 33-10824; SEC Amends and Expands Accredited Investor Definition, **App 7R**
- SEC Release 33-10884; Facilitating Capital Formation and Expanding Investment Opportunities by Improving Access to Capital in Private Markets, **App 7P**
- Section 4(a)(2) stock purchase agreement, **App 7S**
- Section 4(a)(5) and Regulation A, impact on exemptions under, **7:21**
- Section 54(a), election under, **7:62**
- Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC)

  - Generally, **7:3 to 7:25**
  - Federal and state regulation, relationship between, **7:22 to 7:25**
  - Modification of prior exemptions

    - Rule 504 versus Rule 240, below this group
    - Rule 505 (former) versus Rule 242, below this group
    - Rule 506 versus Rule 146, **7:15 to 7:18**

  - Prior exemptions. Modification of prior exemptions, above this group
  - Reporting and nonreporting businesses, distinction between, **7:19, 7:20**
  - Rule 240. Rule 504 versus Rule 240, below this group
  - Rule 242. Rule 505 (former) versus Rule 242, above
  - Rule 503, Form D, **7:169**
  - Rule 504, SEC's view, generally, **7:23**
  - Rule 504 versus rescinded Rule 240

    - Limitation on number of beneficial owners, **7:8**

  - Rule 504 versus Rule 240

    - Generally, **7:5 to 7:9**
    - Aggregate sales price, **7:6**
    - Brokerage commissions, **7:7**
    - Offering and resales, manner of, **7:9**

  - Rule 505 (former), SEC's view, generally, **7:24**
  - Rule 505 (former) versus Rule 242

    - Generally, **7:10 to 7:14**
    - Accredited investors, **7:14**
    - Aggregate sales price, **7:13**
    - Disclosure, **7:12**
    - Issuer, type of, **7:11**

  - Rule 506, **7:25**
  - Rule 506 versus Rule 146, **7:15 to 7:18**

## LIMITED OFFERING EXEMPTIONS, REGULATION D—Cont'd

Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC)

- Cont'd
- Section 4(a)(5) and Regulation A, impact on exemptions under, **7:21**
- Single business enterprise, **7:112**
- Staff analysis. Evaluation, above
- § D7.5 million, offerings over, **7:125**
- § D7.5 million, offerings up to, **7:124**
- Significant managerial assistance, **7:61**
- Simplify disclosure, **7:295**
- Simultaneous foreign offerings, **7:115**
- Single business enterprise, **7:112 to 7:114**
- Size of offerings, **7:301**
- Small business investment companies, **7:205**
- Solicitation, **7:135, 7:161, 7:165**
- Sophistication, **7:16, 7:97**
- SPAC Subscription Agreement under Rule 506, **App 7T**
- Special disclosure in business combinations, **7:131**
- Special registration procedure, State Blue Sky Laws, **7:269, 7:278, 7:284**
- Specific conditions

  - § D5 million, exemption for limited offers and sales not exceeding, Rule 505 (former), above
  - § D5 million, exemption for sales not exceeding, Rule 504, above
  - Resale, advice about limitations on, **7:202**
  - Rule 506, offers and sales without regard to dollar amount, **7:225 to 7:227**
  - Rule 506(c)(2), offers and sales without regard to dollar amount, **7:231**

- Staff interpretations, advertisements by third person, **7:143**
- State Blue Sky Laws

  - Generally, **7:263 to 7:285**
  - Federal-state registration exemptions, **7:264**
  - Rule 504 transactions

    - Generally, **7:265 to 7:269**
    - Absence of coordination, possible exemptions in, **7:268**
    - Explicit efforts to coordinate directly, **7:266**
    - General regulation, coordination as result of, **7:267**
    - Special registration procedure, **7:269**

  - Rule 505 (former) transactions

    - Generally, **7:270 to 7:278**
    - Absence of coordination, possible exemptions in, **7:273 to 7:276**
    - Beneficial owners, limited number of, **7:276**
    - Explicit efforts to coordinate directly, **7:271**
    - General regulation, coordination as result of, **7:272**

**LIMITED OFFERING EXEMPTIONS,  
REGULATION D—Cont'd**

State Blue Sky Laws—Cont'd  
 Rule 505 (former) transactions—Cont'd  
 Offerees, limited number of, **7:274**  
 Private offerings, **7:275**  
 Purchasers, limited number of, **7:274**  
 Special registration procedure, **7:278**  
 Rule 506 transactions  
 Generally, **7:279 to 7:284**  
 Absence of coordination, possible exemptions in, **7:283**  
 Broker-dealer and agent registration, **7:285**  
 Explicit efforts to coordinate directly, **7:281**  
 Federal preemption, **7:280**  
 General regulation, coordination as result of, **7:282**  
 Issuer and employees, **7:285**  
 NSMIA, after, **7:280**  
 Online offers, **7:279**  
 Prior to NSMIA, **7:281 to 7:284**  
 Special registration procedure, **7:284**  
 State regulations, **7:22 to 7:25**  
 Statutory authority, **7:44**  
 Statutory basis, Rule 506, **7:219**  
 Stock, **7:173, 7:251**  
 Structured finance product, proposed Rule 501(i), **7:100**  
 Substantive relationship, **7:148, 7:153, 7:154, 7:159**  
 Sum of consideration, determining, **7:81**  
 Tax-exempt organizations, **7:65 to 7:68**  
 Third person, **7:140 to 7:143**  
 Threat of integration, **7:108**  
 Time  
 Effective dates, **7:42**  
 § D5 million, exemption for sales not exceeding, Rule 504, **7:195**  
 Timing  
 Generally, **7:170 to 7:175**  
 General conditions, above  
 Total assets in excess of \$5 million, tax-exempt organizations, **7:67**  
 Traditional integration factors, **7:109 et seq., 7:110**  
 Trusts, **7:73, 7:93, 7:94**  
 Twilight Zone in Rule 506 offerings, **7:162 to 7:165**  
 § D2 million, offerings up to, **7:123**  
 Uniform limited offering exemption, **7:217**  
 Unusual nonpublic offerings. Nonpublic offerings, above  
 Valuation, **7:82**  
 Valuation of securities to be offered, **7:193, 7:194**

**LIMITED OFFERING EXEMPTIONS,  
REGULATION D—Cont'd**

Verification of accredited investor status, Rule 506, offers and sales without regard to dollar amount, **7:232**  
 Violations  
 Rule 507, above  
 Rule 508, above  
 Withdrawn registrations, **7:261**  
 Written disclosure. General conditions, above

**LIMITED PARTNERSHIP**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:92**  
 Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:109**  
 Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:109**

**LIQUIDITY REQUIREMENTS**

Private resales, Rule 144A, **10A:10**

**LISTED AND UNLISTED SECURITIES**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:182, 10:183**

**LISTED OPTIONS**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:33**

**LOSS CAUSATION, LACK OF**

Violations, Section 12(a)(2), **16:120**

**LOWER COURT**

Pinter v. Dahl, liable persons, Section 12(a)(1), **16:44**

**MAIL AND MAILING**

Intrastate offerings under Section 3(a)(11), **4:3**  
 Violations

Section 12(a)(1), **16:48 to 16:50**  
 Section 12(a)(2), **16:94 to 16:96**

**MAINTENANCE OF CONTROL**

Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), **2:9, 2:10**

**MANAGER**

Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:4**

**MARGIN REQUIREMENTS**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:46**

**MARINE VENTURES**

Intrastate offerings under Section 3(a)(11), **4:29**

**MARKET**

Brokers' special exemption, Section 4(a)(4), **13:40**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:157**

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:152**

Private resales, Rule 144A, **10A:55, 10A:56**

**MARKET-MAKER**

Brokers' special exemption, Section 4(a)(4), **13:20, 13:32**  
 Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:219 to 10:222**

**MATERIALITY**

Violations, Section 12(a)(2)  
 Material misstatement, **16:103**

**MATERIAL MISSTATEMENT**

**Violations** (this index)

**MAXIMUM OFFERING PRICE**

**Limited Offering Exemptions, Regulation D** (this index)  
**Mini-Registration Under Section 3(b), Regulation A** (this index)

**MAXIMUM TIMING**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:172**

**MEDIA RELEASE**

Dealers' exemption, Section 4(a)(3), **12:25, 12:26**

**MERGER**

Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9)  
 Guaranteed obligations, **2:47**  
 Multi-party merger, **2:39**  
 Original issuer disappears in reorganization  
 Affiliates, **2:32 to 2:34**  
 Assumption of obligations, **2:30, 2:31**  
 Nonaffiliates, **2:30, 2:31**  
 Three-party merger, **2:34**  
 Two-party merger, **2:30, 2:33**  
 Original issuer survives reorganization, **2:39, 2:40**  
 Reverse merger, **2:40**  
 Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:75**

**MINERAL RIGHTS**

Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:10 to 9:13**

**MINIMUM-MAXIMUM**

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:166**

**MINIMUM-MAXIMUM TIMING**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:172**

**MINI-REGISTRATION UNDER SECTION 3(B), REGULATION A**

Abandoned offering statement, **6:90**  
 Absolute unworthiness, exclusions, **6:9**  
 Abuses in Regulation A offerings, **6:15**  
 Adjustments to maximum offering price, **6:33**

**MINI-REGISTRATION UNDER SECTION 3(B), REGULATION A—Cont'd**

Administrative suspension of Regulation A exemption  
 Generally, **6:93 to 6:114**  
 Disciplinary sanctions, **6:95**  
 Equitable relief, **6:94**  
 Order. Rule 258, below this group  
 Rule 258  
 Generally, **6:96 to 6:114**  
 Order. Vacating temporary suspension order, below this subgroup  
 Permanent suspension, **6:112 to 6:114**  
 Substantive grounds, **6:113**  
 Temporary suspension  
 Generally, **6:97 to 6:111**  
 Cooperate in SEC investigation, failure to, **6:105**  
 Misleading statements, **6:101**  
 No exemption available or conditions of exemption not met, **6:100**  
 Notice of temporary suspension order, **6:98**  
 Post-filing violations, **6:103**  
 Prior notice not required, **6:97**  
 Rules 262(a) and violation, **6:104**  
 Substantive grounds, generally, **6:99 to 6:105**  
 Vacating temporary suspension order, below this subgroup  
 Violation of Section 17 of Act, **6:102**  
 Vacating permanent suspension order, **6:114**  
 Vacating temporary suspension order  
 Generally, **6:106 to 6:111**  
 Amendment, **6:109**  
 Challenge to allegations in order, **6:108**  
 Post-order filing, **6:111**  
 Substantive grounds, generally, **6:107 to 6:111**  
 Withdrawal, **6:110**  
 Temporary suspension. Rule 258, above this group  
 Vacating temporary suspension order. Rule 258, above this group  
 Affiliates and nonaffiliates  
 Nonaffiliates, potential seller, **6:32**  
 Potential seller, **6:31, 6:32**  
 Unworthy offering doctrine, below  
 Aggregate offering price  
 Generally, **6:38 to 6:40**  
 Calculation of, **6:41 to 6:44**  
 Allegations, **6:108**  
 Amendments, **6:4:100, 6:109**  
 Amount of securities exempted  
 Generally, **6:26 to 6:44**  
 Adjustments to maximum offering price, **6:33**

**MINI-REGISTRATION UNDER SECTION 3(B), REGULATION A—Cont'd**

Amount of securities exempted—Cont'd

Assumption of issuer's debts as securities, **6:36**

Bonus securities as underwriter's compensation, **6:34**

Integrated offerings, **6:35**

Limitation on, **6:22, 6:23**

Maximum offering price

- Generally, **6:27 to 6:32**
- Adjustments, **6:33**
- Affiliate of issuer as potential seller, **6:31**
- Categories of potential sellers, **6:29 to 6:32**
- Categories of transactions, **6:28**
- Issuer as potential seller, **6:30**
- Nonaffiliate of issuer as potential seller, **6:32**

Offering

- Maximum offering price, above this group
- Valuation of securities to be offered, below this group

Price. Maximum offering price, above this group

Special problems, **6:34 to 6:36**

Valuation of securities to be offered

- Generally, **6:37 to 6:44**
- Aggregate offering price

  - Generally, **6:38 to 6:40**
  - Calculation of, **6:41 to 6:44**

- Calculation of aggregate offering price, **6:41 to 6:44**
- Cash offering, **6:42**
- At the market, **6:39**
- Noncash exchange contemporaneous with cash offering, **6:43**
- Noncash exchange with no contemporaneous cash offering, **6:44**
- Short-term rights and warrants, **6:40**

Associates of issuer. Unworthy offering doctrine, below

Assumption of issuer's debts as securities, **6:36**

Availability, **6:21, 6:100**

Avoidance of disqualification, unworthy offering doctrine, **6:13**

Bonus securities as underwriter's compensation, **6:34**

Business experience, **6:61**

Calculation of aggregate offering price, **6:41 to 6:44**

Capitalization, **6:66, 6:67**

Cash offering, **6:42, 6:43**

Certification, **6:83**

Challenge to allegations in order, **6:108**

Circular

- Filing requirements, **6:86**
- Offering circular and exhibits, below

**MINI-REGISTRATION UNDER SECTION 3(B), REGULATION A—Cont'd**

Circular—Cont'd

- Offerings, generally, **6:82**
- Statements, filing requirements, **6:89**

Communications, **6:86, 6:91**

Compared with registration, **6:5**

Compensation, **6:34**

Computation, **6:22**

Conditions not met, **6:100**

Congressional proposals, **6:16**

Contemporaneous acts and matters, **6:43**

Cooperate in SEC investigation, failure to, **6:105**

Covered persons, rule 262(a), **6:11**

Cover page and introductory statements, **6:52**

Current regulation, **6:25**

Debts, **6:36**

Description of securities to be offered in capitalization, **6:66**

Dilution, **6:67**

Direct offerings, **6:76, 6:77**

Disciplinary sanctions, **6:95**

Disqualifying events, unworthy offering doctrine, **6:12, 6:13**

Distribution, **6:54**

Equitable relief, **6:94**

Escrow, **6:23**

Evaluation of Regulation A

- Generally, **6:116 to 6:123**
- Major problems prior to 2015, **6:117**
- State regulators, mandatory disclosure by issuers to

  - Generally, **6:121 to 6:123**
  - Tier 1: registered disclosure, **6:122**
  - Tier 2: unregistered disclosure, **6:123**

- State securities regulation, generally, **6:119, 6:120**
- 2015 amendments, impact, **6:118**
- 2020 amendments, **6:4.100**

Exchange, **6:43, 6:44**

Exclusions, absolute unworthiness, **6:9**

Exemption requirements, **6:6**

Exhibits. Offering circular and exhibits, below

Family relationships, **6:60**

Filing requirements

- Generally, **6:84 to 6:92**
- Abandoned offering statement, **6:90**
- Administrative suspension of Regulation A exemption, **6:111**
- 1992 amendments, impact, **6:84 to 6:86**
- Offering statement, **6:98**
- Ongoing reporting, **6:92**
- Posteffective period, **6:89 to 6:92**
- Preeffective period, **6:84 to 6:88**
- Prefiling written solicitations of interest, **6:87**

**MINI-REGISTRATION UNDER SECTION 3(B), REGULATION A—Cont'd**

Filing requirements—Cont'd  
 Revised offering statement, **6:89**  
 2015 amendments, impact, **6:87, 6:88**  
 Written communications other than offering circular, **6:86, 6:91**  
 Financial statements. Offering circular and exhibits, below  
 Forms, unseasoned or promotional companies, former Form 7-A, **6:24**  
 Future successions, **6:84**  
 Future successions to other businesses, **6:84**  
 Good faith compliance, **6:115**  
 History and summary, **6:1 et seq.**  
 Identification, **6:59**  
 Integrated offerings, **6:35**  
 Interest, **6:65, 6:87**  
 Introductory statements, **6:52**  
 Investigation, **6:105**  
 Issuer  
 Amount of securities exempted, **6:30, 6:36**  
 Unseasoned or promotional companies, **6:20**  
 Unworthy offering doctrine, below  
 JOBS Act of 2012, **6:450**  
 Limitations and restrictions, **6:21 to 6:23**  
 At the market, **6:39**  
 Maximum offering price. Amount of securities exempted, above  
 Misleading statements, **6:101**  
 1992 amendments  
 Generally, **6:4**  
 Impact, **6:78 to 6:80, 6:84 to 6:86**  
 Noncash exchange, **6:43, 6:44**  
 Notice, **6:46, 6:47, 6:98**  
 Offering circular and exhibits  
 Generally, **6:48 to 6:75**  
 Circular, Part II  
 Generally, **6:49 to 6:72**  
 Capitalization, **6:66, 6:67**  
 Circular and prospectus, comparison, **6:50**  
 Cover page and introductory statements, **6:52**  
 Description of securities to be offered in capitalization, **6:66**  
 Dilution, **6:67**  
 Distribution, **6:54**  
 Financial statements  
 Generally, **6:69 to 6:72**  
 Certification, **6:83**  
 Future successions, **6:84**  
 Officers, directors, and controlling persons  
 Generally, **6:57 to 6:65**  
 Business experience, **6:61**  
 Family relationships, **6:60**  
 Identification, **6:59**

**MINI-REGISTRATION UNDER SECTION 3(B), REGULATION A—Cont'd**

Offering circular and exhibits—Cont'd  
 Circular, Part II—Cont'd  
 Officers, directors, and controlling persons—Cont'd  
 Interests of management and others in transactions, **6:65**  
 Involvement in legal proceedings, **6:62**  
 Remuneration, **6:63**  
 Security ownership of management and other security holders, **6:64**  
 Organization and operation of issuer's business, **6:55, 6:56**  
 Proceeds, use of, **6:68**  
 Requirements, **6:55, 6:56**  
 SEC's view, **6:49**  
 Special requirements for promotional companies, **6:56**  
 Terms of offering, **6:53**  
 Exhibits, Part III, **6:73, 6:74**  
 Filing requirements, **6:86, 6:91**  
 Financial statements. Circular, Part II, above this group  
 Officers, directors, and controlling persons. Circular, Part II, above this group  
 Signature, **6:75**  
 Specific requirements, **6:74**  
 Offering circular and statements, filing requirements, **6:89**  
 Offerings  
 Amount of securities exempted, above  
 Circular, use of, **6:82**  
 Direct offerings, **6:76, 6:77**  
 Filing requirements, **6:89, 6:90**  
 Manner of, generally, **6:76 to 6:82**  
 1992 amendments, impact, **6:78 to 6:80, 6:82**  
 Posteffective period, **6:82, 6:83**  
 Preeffective period  
 1992 amendments, **6:78 to 6:80**  
 Generally, **6:76 to 6:82**  
 Direct offerings, **6:76**  
 Prefiling period, **6:79**  
 Underwritten offerings, **6:77**  
 Waiting period, **6:80**  
 Preeffective period, impact of 2015 amendments, **6:81**  
 Prefiling period, **6:79**  
 Prohibited representations, **6:83**  
 Special requirements, **6:77**  
 2015, Regulation A before, **6:78 to 6:80**  
 Underwritten offerings, **6:77**  
 Unworthy offering doctrine, below  
 Waiting period, **6:80**  
 Offering statement, **6:45 to 6:47, 6:98**

<b>MINI-REGISTRATION UNDER SECTION 3(B), REGULATION A—Cont'd</b>
Officers and directors
Offering circular and exhibits, above
Ongoing reporting, <b>6:92</b>
Order. Administrative suspension of Regulation A exemption, above
Permanent suspension, <b>6:112, 6:113</b>
Posteffective period, <b>6:82, 6:83, 6:89 to 6:92</b>
Post-filing violations, <b>6:103</b>
Post-order filing, <b>6:111</b>
Potential sellers, <b>6:29 to 6:32</b>
Predecessor. Unworthy offering doctrine, below
Preeffective period
Filing requirements, <b>6:84 to 6:88</b>
Impact of 2015 amendments, <b>6:81</b>
Offerings, above
Prefiling period, <b>6:79</b>
Prefiling written solicitations of interest, <b>6:87</b>
Price
Aggregate offering price
Generally, <b>6:38 to 6:40</b>
Calculation of, <b>6:41 to 6:44</b>
Amount of securities exempted, above
Proceeds, use of, <b>6:68</b>
Promotional companies
Offering circular and exhibits, <b>6:56</b>
Unseasoned or promotional companies, below
Prospectus, <b>6:50</b>
Records and recording. Filing requirements, above
Reform, <b>6:4</b>
Remuneration, <b>6:63</b>
Reports and reporting, <b>6:18, 6:92</b>
Representations, <b>6:83</b>
Residence of issuer, <b>6:8</b>
Revised offering statement, <b>6:89</b>
Rule 253. Unseasoned or promotional companies, below
Rule 258
Administrative suspension of Regulation A exemption, above
<b>Rule 262</b> (this index)
Rules 262(a) and violation, <b>6:104</b>
Sanctions, <b>6:95</b>
SEC approach, unseasoned or promotional companies, <b>6:17</b>
SEC implementing rules in 2015, <b>6:4.50</b>
Section 17 violation, <b>6:102</b>
Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC)
Unseasoned or promotional companies, below
Security holders, <b>6:64</b>
Security ownership of management and other security holders, <b>6:64</b>
Short-term rights and warrants, <b>6:40</b>

<b>MINI-REGISTRATION UNDER SECTION 3(B), REGULATION A—Cont'd</b>
Signature, <b>6:75</b>
Solicitation, <b>6:87</b>
Special computation provision, <b>6:22</b>
Special escrow provision, <b>6:23</b>
Special requirements
Generally, <b>6:77</b>
Offering circular and exhibits, <b>6:56</b>
Unseasoned or promotional companies, below
Specific requirements, <b>6:74</b>
Substantial and good faith compliance, <b>6:115</b>
Suspension
Administrative suspension of Regulation A exemption, above
Permanent suspension, <b>6:112, 6:113</b>
Temporary suspension. Administrative suspension of Regulation A exemption, above
Terms of offering, <b>6:53</b>
Time
Filing requirements
Posteffective period, <b>6:89 to 6:92</b>
Preeffective period, <b>6:84 to 6:88</b>
Offerings
Prefiling period, <b>6:79</b>
Waiting period, <b>6:80</b>
2015
Amendments, impact, <b>6:81, 6:87, 6:88, 6:118</b>
Major problems prior to, <b>6:117</b>
Regulation A before, <b>6:78 to 6:80</b>
2020
Amendments, <b>6:4.100</b>
Underwriter, <b>6:34</b>
Underwritten offerings, <b>6:77</b>
Unseasoned or promotional companies
Generally, <b>6:14 to 6:25</b>
Abuses in Regulation A offerings, <b>6:15</b>
Congressional proposals, <b>6:16</b>
Current regulation, <b>6:25</b>
Rule 253. SEC view 1953-1992, below
SEC approach, <b>6:17</b>
SEC view 1953-1992
Generally, <b>6:19 to 6:24</b>
Form 7-A, former, <b>6:24</b>
Issuers, <b>6:20</b>
Limitation on amount of securities exempted, <b>6:22, 6:23</b>
Limitations on availability of exemption, <b>6:21</b>
Rule 253, generally, <b>6:19 to 6:24</b>
Special computation provision, <b>6:22</b>
Special escrow provision, <b>6:23</b>
Special requirements, generally, <b>6:14 to 6:25</b>
Wheat Report recommendations, <b>6:18</b>

**MINI-REGISTRATION UNDER SECTION 3(B), REGULATION A—Cont'd**  
Unworthy offering doctrine  
    Generally, **6:7 to 6:13**  
Absolute unworthiness, exclusions, **6:9**  
Affiliate issuer. Issuer, predecessor, or affiliate issuer, below this group  
    Avoidance of disqualification, **6:13**  
Disqualifying events, **6:12, 6:13**  
Issuer, predecessor, or affiliate issuer  
    Generally, **6:10 to 6:13**  
    Covered persons, rule 262(a), **6:11**  
Predecessor. Issuer, predecessor, or affiliate issuer, above this group  
    Residence of issuer, **6:8**  
Vacating permanent suspension order, **6:114**  
Vacating temporary suspension order.  
    Administrative suspension of Regulation A exemption, above  
Valuation of securities to be offered. Amount of securities exempted, above  
Waiting period, **6:80**  
Warrants, **6:40**  
Wheat Report recommendations, **6:18**  
Withdrawal, **6:110**  
Written communications, **6:86, 6:91**  
Written solicitations, **6:87**

**MISLEADING ACTS AND MATTERS**  
**Fraud** (this index)

**MISSTATEMENT**  
**Violations** (this index)

**MODIFICATIONS**  
**Changes, Modifications, and Amendments** (this index)

**MOM AND POP START-UP**  
Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:180**

**MONEY**  
**Cash or Money** (this index)

**MORTGAGES**  
Loans, generally, **1:92**  
**Real Estate Mortgage Securities, Section 4(5)**  
(this index)

**MOTION PICTURES**  
Intrastate offerings under Section 3(a)(11), **4:31**

**MOTIVATION**  
Liable persons, Section 12(a)(2), **16:83**

**MULTI-PARTY MERGER**  
Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), **2:39**

**MULTIPLE ACCOUNTS**  
Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:209**

**MULTIPLE CLASS STRUCTURES**  
Real estate mortgage securities, Section 4(5), **1:107**

**MULTIPLE STATES**  
Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:187**

**NASAA UNIFORM LIMITED OFFERING EXEMPTION**  
Generally, **7:217**

**NATIONAL INTEREST**  
Intrastate offerings under Section 3(a)(11), **4:71**

**NATIONAL SECURITIES EXCHANGES**  
Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:30**

**NATIONAL SECURITIES MARKETS ACT OF 1996**  
Reorganization with court or agency approval under Section 3(a)(10), **3:3**

**NATURAL PERSONS**  
**Limited Offering Exemptions, Regulation D**  
(this index)  
**Nonpublic Offerings** (this index)

**NEGOTIATIONS**  
Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:73, 11:175**

**NET CAPITAL**  
Private resales, Rule 144A, **10A:12**

**NET WORTH**  
Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:71**  
Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:71, 11:95**  
Private resales, Rule 144A, **10A:39**

**NEW BUSINESSES**  
Intrastate offerings under Section 3(a)(11), **4:24**

**NEW DEBT SECURITIES**  
Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), **2:41**

**NEW ENTITY**  
Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), **2:35**

**NEW EQUITY SECURITIES**  
Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), **2:38 to 2:40**

**NEW ISSUER**  
Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), **2:31**

**NINETY-DAY OBLIGATION**  
Dealers' exemption, Section 4(a)(3), **12:21, 12:22**

**NINETY-DAY WAITING PERIOD**  
Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:81, 10:82**

**NO-ACTION LETTERS**

Scope of Securities Act of 1933, **1:1 et seq.**  
Source materials, **1:23**

**NOMINEES AND ASSOCIATES**

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:41**

**NONACCREDITED INVESTORS**

**Limited Offering Exemptions, Regulation D**  
(this index)

**Nonpublic Offerings** (this index)

**NONAFFILIATES**

**Affiliates and Nonaffiliates** (this index)

**NONCASH CONSIDERATION**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:82**

**NONCASH EXCHANGE**

Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A, **6:43, 6:44**

**NONCONTRIBUTORY EMPLOYEE****BENEFIT PLANS**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:88**  
Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:51**

**NONDISCLOSURE**

Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), **2:2**

**NON-FUNGIBLE TOKENS (NFTS)**

Cryptocurrency, **16:128**

**NONPUBLIC OFFERINGS**

Generally, **11:1 et seq.**

Access offerees, **11:79, 11:80**

Accredited investors

Generally, **11:83 to 11:100**

Directors, executive directors, and general partners, Rule 501(a)(4), **11:94**

Eligible entities, **11:99**

Entities made of up accredited investors, **11:98 to 11:100**

Equity owners, **11:100**

For-profit organizations, Rule 501(a)(3), **11:93**

Identifying "person," **11:84**

Information, **11:113**

Institutional investors, Rule 501(a)(1), **11:87**

Manner of offerings, Rule 506(c)(2), **11:157.70, 11:157.90**

Natural persons, below

Private business development companies, Rule 501(a)(2), **11:88**

Redesignations, **11:86**

Reform and reorganization, **11:85, 11:86**

Reorganization, **11:85, 11:86**

Status of tax-exempt, **11:90**

Tax-exempt organizations, Rule 501(a)(3), **11:89 to 11:92**

Total assets in excess of \$5 million, **11:91**

**NONPUBLIC OFFERINGS—Cont'd**

Accredited investors—Cont'd  
Trusts, Rule 501(a)(7), **11:97**

Verification of accredited investors, **11:157.90**

Acknowledgment by purchaser, **11:104**

Advertisements and advertising  
General advertising and solicitation prohibited, **11:131, 11:131.25**

Issuer, advertising by, **11:136**

Offeree and person making communication, relationship between, **11:146**

Solicitations of interest prior to registration public offering, **11:131.25**

Third person, advertising by, **11:137 to 11:139**

Affiliates and nonaffiliates

Advertisements by affiliates, **11:137**

Advertisements by nonaffiliates, **11:139**

Offeree and person making communication, relationship between, below

Agency, **11:153**

Appeal and review. Offeree qualification, below

Appropriate legends, **11:160**

Approximate net worth, **11:71**

Assets, **11:91**

Assistance from attorney or business advisor, **11:72**

Associates, **11:41**

Attorneys, **11:72**

Bear risks, ability to, **11:77**

Both accredited and nonaccredited investors, **11:125**

Burden of proof

Generally, **11:189 to 11:195**

Deficiency, nature of, **11:195**

Due diligence procedure, **11:191**

Issuer's attitude towards compliance, **11:194**

Lawsuit, nature of, **11:193**

Law versus fact, **11:190**

Legal standard, **11:189**

Business advisor, **11:72**

Business combinations, **11:124, 11:187, 11:188**

Business development companies, **11:88**

Business experience, **11:67**

Business organizations and fiduciaries, **11:39, 11:40**

Business relationship, establishment of, **11:143 to 11:145**

Calculation of number of purchasers

Generally, **11:47 to 11:52**

Foreign citizens or residents, **11:52**

Noncontributory employee benefit plans, **11:51**

Number of offerees or purchasers, **11:47**

Rule 501(e)(1), **11:48**

Rule 501(e)(2), **11:49, 11:50**

Capital, venture, **11:181**

Case law, **11:29**

**NONPUBLIC OFFERINGS—Cont'd**

Citizenship, **11:52**  
 Close personal friends, **11:81**  
 Communication  
     Direct communication with offerees, **11:130**  
     Issuer and person making communication,  
         relationship between, **11:136 to 11:139**  
     Offeree and person making communication,  
         relationship between, below  
 Conditioning of market by issuer, **11:152**  
 Condition of exemption, **11:57**  
 Construction and interpretation  
     Generally, **11:12**  
     Purchaser representative, **11:106**  
     SEC interpretation, **11:11**  
     Staff interpretations, **11:139**  
 Contemporaneous foreign offering, **11:30, 11:34**  
 Contradictory oral representations, accurate  
     disclosure document, **11:203**  
 Courts of appeals, survey of. Offeree qualifica-  
     tion, below  
 Covenants, **11:177**  
 Debt securities, **11:174**  
 Deceptive act or practice, **11:199**  
 Deficiency, nature of, **11:195**  
 Definitions  
     Access offerees, **11:79**  
     Offeree qualification, below  
     “Offering” and “offeree” defined, below  
 Direct communication with offerees, **11:130**  
 Direct negotiations, **11:175**  
 Directors, executive directors, and general  
     partners, Rule 501(a)(4), **11:94**  
 Disclosure  
     Fraud, **11:201 to 11:203**  
     Information, above  
     Purchaser representative, **11:105**  
 Disposition. Limitations on disposition, below  
 Due diligence procedure, **11:191**  
 Economic bargaining power, **11:74**  
 Education, **11:65**  
 Eligible entities, **11:99**  
 Employee benefit plans, **11:51**  
 Employee offerings, **11:178**  
 Employee stock option plan, **11:167**  
 Enforcement, **11:44**  
 Equity owners, **11:100**  
 Evidence  
     Agency, **11:153**  
     Burden of proof, above  
     Substantive relationships with offerees, **11:154**  
 Exhibits, **11:121**  
 Expenses of offering, **11:186**  
 Experiment with objective criteria, **11:9**  
 Fiduciaries, **11:39, 11:40**

**NONPUBLIC OFFERINGS—Cont'd**

Filing requirements  
     Employee stock option plan, **11:167**  
     Form D filing and amendment process, **11:168**  
     Minimum-maximum, **11:166**  
     Timing, **11:165 to 11:168**  
     § D5 million, total assets in excess of, **11:91**  
     Fixed or negotiated terms, **11:73**  
     Foreign citizens or residents, **11:52**  
     Foreign offerees, **11:135**  
     Foreign offering, **11:30, 11:34**  
     Form D filing and amendment process, **11:168**  
     For-profit organizations, Rule 501(a)(3), **11:93**  
 Fraud  
     Generally, **11:196 to 11:203**  
     Accurate disclosure document, **11:203**  
     Contradictory oral representations, accurate  
         disclosure document, **11:203**  
     Deceptive act or practice, **11:199**  
     Disclosure, **11:201 to 11:203**  
     Exemption despite existence of fraud, **11:197**  
     Inform purchasers about limitations on disposi-  
         tion, failure to, **11:200**  
     Justifiable reliance, **11:201**  
     Misleading disclosure document, accurate  
         information available, **11:202**  
     Private placement procedures, failure to  
         satisfy, **11:198 to 11:200**  
 Friends, **11:81**  
 General advertising and solicitation prohibited,  
     **11:131, 11:131.25**  
 General partners, **11:94**  
 Identifying “person,” **11:84**  
 Identifying real offerees and purchasers, **11:38 to**  
     **11:40**  
 Income test, **11:96**  
 Independence, **11:102**  
 Information  
     Generally, **11:107 to 11:125**  
     Accredited investors only, **11:113**  
     Both accredited and nonaccredited investors,  
         **11:125**  
 Disclosure  
     Generally, **11:110, 11:111**  
     Nonaccredited investors only, below this  
         group  
     Limited partnerships, **11:109**  
     Nonaccredited investors only  
         Generally, **11:114 to 11:124**  
         Disclosure, written, generally, **11:115 to**  
             **11:120**  
         Disclosure of resale limitations, **11:123**  
     Exhibits, **11:121**  
     Issuer not subject to reporting requirements,  
         **11:116 to 11:119**

**NONPUBLIC OFFERINGS—Cont'd**

Information—Cont'd

- Nonaccredited investors only—Cont'd
  - Questions and answers, opportunity for, **11:122**
  - Reporting requirements, **11:120**
  - § D7.5 million, offerings over, **11:119**
  - § D7.5 million, offerings up to, **11:118**
  - Special disclosure in business combinations, **11:124**
  - § D2 million, offerings up to, **11:117**
  - Written disclosure, generally, **11:115 to 11:120**
- Rule 506(b), transactions under, **11:112 to 11:125**
  - Written disclosure. Nonaccredited investors only, above this group
- Institutional advertising, **11:146**
- Institutional investors, Rule 501(a)(1), **11:87**
- Institutional private placements. Transactional organization, below
- Integration
  - Generally, **11:28 to 11:34**
  - Case law, **11:29**
  - Contemporaneous foreign offering, **11:30, 11:34**
  - Part of offering concept, **11:31**
  - Safe harbor provisions, **11:32**
  - SEC view, Rule 152, **11:28**
  - Single business enterprise, **11:33**
- Intent, **11:159**
- Interpretation. Construction and interpretation, above
  - Investment, substantial, **11:176**
  - Investment experience, **11:68**
  - Investment intent, **11:159**
  - Investor participation, sales and, **11:185**
- Issuer
  - Advertisements by issuer, **11:136**
  - Burden of proof, **11:194**
  - Communication, relationship between issuer and person making, **11:136 to 11:139**
  - Communication, relationship between offeree and person making, **11:141**
  - Conditioning of market by issuer, **11:152**
  - Institutional private placements, **11:173**
  - Nature of, generally, **11:5**
  - Promotional offerings, **11:183**
  - Reporting requirements, **11:116 to 11:119**
  - Rule 506, issuer transactions, below
  - Sophistication of offeree, **11:69**
  - Transactions by, generally, **11:26 to 11:27.90**
- Judicial attitude, **11:43**
- Judicial construction and interpretation, **11:12, 11:106**
- Justifiable reliance, **11:201**

**NONPUBLIC OFFERINGS—Cont'd**

- Legal standard, **11:189**
- Legends, **11:160, 11:163**
- Limitations and restrictions
  - Disposition. Limitations on disposition, below
  - Purchasers, number of, **11:46**
  - Resale limitations, disclosure of, **11:123**
  - Significance, factor of, **11:59**
- Limitations on disposition
  - Generally, **11:158 to 11:163**
  - Appropriate legends, **11:160**
  - Fraud, **11:200**
  - Investment intent, **11:159**
  - Removal of restrictive legends, **11:163**
  - Stop-transfer orders, **11:161**
- Limited Offering Exemptions, Regulation D**
  - (this index)
  - Limited partnerships, **11:109**
  - Manner of offering, generally, **11:128.50 to 11:157**
  - Market, **11:152**
  - Minimum-maximum, **11:166**
  - Misleading disclosure document, accurate information available, **11:202**
  - Mom and pop start-up, **11:180**
  - Natural persons
    - § D1 million net worth test, Rule 501(a)(5), **11:95**
    - Income test, Rule 501(a)(6), **11:96**
  - Negotiated terms, **11:73**
  - Negotiations, **11:175**
  - Net worth, **11:71, 11:95**
  - Nominees and associates, **11:41**
  - Nonaccredited investors only. Information, above
  - Noncontributory employee benefit plans, **11:51**
  - Notice and knowledge, **11:200**
  - Number of offerees or purchasers, Rule 506(b)
    - Generally, **11:42 to 11:52**
    - Calculation of number of purchasers, above
    - Foreign citizens or residents, **11:52**
    - Limitation number of purchasers, **11:46**
    - Noncontributory employee benefit plans, **11:51**
    - Rule 501(e)(1), **11:48**
    - Rule 501(e)(2), **11:49**
    - Specific purpose exception, **11:50**
  - Transactions outside Rule 506
    - Judicial attitude, **11:43**
    - SEC enforcement policy, **11:44**
  - Occupation, **11:66**
  - Offeree
    - Definitions
    - Access offerees, **11:79**

**NONPUBLIC OFFERINGS—Cont'd**

Offeree—Cont'd  
 Definitions—Cont'd  
 "Offering" and "offeree" defined, below  
 Sophistication. Qualifications, below this group  
 Direct communication with offerees, **11:130**  
 Foreign offerees, **11:135**  
 Qualifications  
 Generally, **11:54 to 11:106**  
 Access offerees, **11:79, 11:80**  
 Accredited investor, above  
 Alternatives to sophistication, generally, **11:76 to 11:81**  
 Appeal and review. Sophistication, below this group  
 Bear risks, ability to, **11:77**  
 Close personal friends, **11:81**  
 Courts of appeals, survey of. Sophistication, below this group  
 Definitions  
 Access offerees, **11:79**  
 Sophistication, below this group  
 Relevant questions, **11:54**  
 Sophistication  
 Generally, **11:55 to 11:75**  
 Appeals, survey of court of, generally, **11:55 to 11:61**  
 Approximate net worth, **11:71**  
 Assistance from attorney or business advisor, **11:72**  
 Business experience, **11:67**  
 Condition of exemption, **11:57**  
 Courts of appeals, survey of, generally, **11:55 to 11:61**  
 Defined, generally, **11:62 to 11:74**  
 Economic bargaining power, **11:74**  
 Education, **11:65**  
 Fixed or negotiated terms, **11:73**  
 Important factor, **11:58**  
 Investment experience, **11:68**  
 Issuer, relationship with, **11:69**  
 Limited significance, factor of, **11:59**  
 No position, **11:56**  
 Not relevant consideration, **11:60**  
 Occupation, **11:66**  
 Offeree representative, sophistication by proxy, **11:75**  
 Other offerees, relationship with, **11:70**  
 Proxy, sophistication by, **11:75**  
 Relevant factors, **11:64**  
 Special relationships, **11:78 to 11:81**  
 Relationship to each other, **11:53**  
 Relationship with person making communication. Offeree and person making communication, relationship between, below

**NONPUBLIC OFFERINGS—Cont'd**

Offeree—Cont'd  
 Representative, sophistication by proxy, **11:75**  
 Rule 506, below  
 Timing, **11:154**  
 Offeree and person making communication, relationship between  
 Generally, **11:140 to 11:150**  
 Affiliates and nonaffiliates as offeror  
 Generally, **11:142 to 11:150**  
 Business relationship, establishment of, **11:143 to 11:145**  
 Institutional advertising, **11:146**  
 Nonaffiliate as offeror, **11:147 to 11:149**  
 Preexisting relationship, **11:145**  
 Substantive relationship, **11:144**  
 Issuer as offeror, **11:141**  
 Preexisting substantive relationship, **11:150**  
 Recruitment programs, **11:148**  
 Substantive relationship, establishment of, **11:149**  
 Offering  
 Definition. "Offering" and "offeree" defined, below  
 Number of units and size, **11:126 to 11:128**  
 "Offering" and "offeree" defined  
 Generally, **11:35 to 11:41**  
 Associates, **11:41**  
 Business organizations and fiduciaries, **11:39, 11:40**  
 Identifying real offerees and purchasers, **11:38 to 11:40**  
 Legal standard, **11:35**  
 Nominees and associates, **11:41**  
 Offeror  
 Issuer as, **11:141**  
 Offeree and person making communication, relationship between, above  
 § D1 million net worth test, Rule 501(a)(5), **11:95**  
 Options, **11:167**  
 Oral representations, **11:203**  
 Orders, **11:161**  
 Ownership, **11:100**  
 Participation of investor, **11:185**  
 Partnerships, **11:94, 11:109**  
 Part of offering concept, **11:31**  
 "Person," **11:84**  
 Placements  
 Private placements, below  
 Transactional organization, below  
 Preexisting relationship, **11:145, 11:150, 11:155**  
 Private business development companies, Rule 501(a)(2), **11:88**  
 Private placements  
 Prior to SEC v. Ralston Purina Co., **11:11, 11:12**

**NONPUBLIC OFFERINGS—Cont'd**

Private placements—Cont'd  
 Procedures, failure to satisfy, **11:198 to 11:200**  
 Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:96**  
 Transactional organization, below  
 Private resales, Rule 144A, **10A:11**  
 Promotional offerings. Transactional organization, below  
 Proxy, sophistication by, **11:75**  
 Purchaser representative  
 Generally, **11:101 to 11:106**  
 Acknowledgment by purchaser, **11:104**  
 Disclosure statement, **11:105**  
 Independence, **11:102**  
 Judicial interpretation, **11:106**  
 Sophistication, **11:103**  
 Purchasers  
 Fraud, **11:200**  
 Identifying real offerees and purchasers, **11:38 to 11:40**  
 Number of offerees or purchasers, above  
 Representative. Purchaser representative, below  
 Rule 506, below  
 Qualifications  
 Disqualifications, Rule 506 of Regulation D, issuer transactions, **7:202.10, 11:27.40, 11:27.70, 11:27.90**  
 Offeree qualification, above  
 Questions and answers, opportunity for, **11:122**  
 Records and recording. Filing requirements, above  
 Recruitment programs, **11:148**  
 Redesignations, **11:86**  
 Reform and reorganization, **11:85, 11:86**  
 Regulation D. Rule 506, below  
 Relevance, **11:54, 11:60, 11:64**  
 Reliance, **11:201**  
 Removal of restrictive legends, **11:163**  
 Reorganization, **11:85, 11:86**  
 Reporting requirements, **11:120**  
 Representations and covenants, **11:177, 11:203**  
 Representative  
 Offeree representative, sophistication by proxy, **11:75**  
 Purchaser representative, above  
 Resale limitations, disclosure of, **11:123**  
 Residents, **11:52**  
 Risks, ability to bear, **11:77**  
 Rule 146, **11:9**  
 Rule 152, **11:28**  
 Rule 501(a)(1), **11:87**  
 Rule 501(a)(2), **11:88**  
 Rule 501(a)(3), **11:93**  
 Rule 501(a)(4), **11:94**  
 Rule 501(a)(5), **11:95**

**NONPUBLIC OFFERINGS—Cont'd**

Rule 501(a)(6), **11:96**  
 Rule 501(a)(7), **11:97**  
 Rule 501(e)(1), **11:48**  
 Rule 501(e)(2), **11:49**  
 Rule 506 of Regulation D  
 Generally, **11:10**  
 Accredited investors, **11:157.70, 11:157.90**  
 Filing requirements, generally, **11:164 to 11:170**  
 Information, Rule 506(b), **11:112 to 11:125**  
 Issuer transactions  
 Generally, **11:27 to 11:27.90**  
 Bad actor disqualification, **7:202.10, 11:27.40**  
 Covered persons, **11:27.60**  
 Disqualifying events, **11:27.70, 11:27.90**  
 Eligible issuers, **11:27.20**  
 Manner of offering  
 506(b), **11:131.50 to 11:157**  
 506(c), **11:157.20 to 11:157.90**  
 NASAA EFD filing system, **11:164.10**  
 Offerees or purchasers. Number of offerees or purchasers, Rule 506(b), above  
 Rule 501, Rule 502(a) and (d) incorporation, **11:157.50**  
 Rule 502(a) and Rule 501 incorporation, **11:157.50**  
 Rule 502(d), Rule 501 incorporation, **11:157.50**  
 Safe harbor provisions, **11:32**  
 SEC enforcement policy, **11:44**  
 SEC interpretation, **11:11**  
 Section 4(a)(2), generally, **11:1 et seq.**  
 Securities, nature of, **11:6**  
 SEC v. Ralston Purina Co. (this index)  
 SEC view, Rule 152, **11:28**  
 § D7.5 million, offerings over, **11:119**  
 § D7.5 million, offerings up to, **11:118**  
 Single business enterprise, **11:33**  
 Size of offerings, **11:126 to 11:128**  
 Solicitation, **11:131, 11:131.25, 11:134, 11:156**  
 Solicitations of interest  
 Registered public offering, prior to 1933 Act, **11:138**  
 Solicitations of interest prior to registration public offering, **11:131.25**  
 Sophistication  
 Offeree qualification, below  
 Purchaser representative, **11:103**  
 Special disclosure in business combinations, **11:124**  
 Special relationships, **11:78 to 11:81**  
 Staff interpretations, **11:139**  
 Status of tax-exempt, **11:90**  
 Stock, **11:167**

**NONPUBLIC OFFERINGS—Cont'd**

- Stop-transfer orders, **11:161**
- Substantial investment, **11:176**
- Substantive relationship, **11:144, 11:149, 11:150, 11:154**
- Tax-exempt organizations, Rule 501(a)(3), **11:89 to 11:92**
- Tax shelter. Transactional organization, below
- Terms, fixed or negotiated, **11:73**
- Third persons, **11:137 to 11:139**
- Timing
  - Generally, **11:151 to 11:155**
  - Conditioning of market by issuer, **11:152**
  - Evidence, **11:153, 11:154**
  - Filing requirements, **11:165 to 11:168**
  - Preexisting relationship, **11:155**
- Total assets in excess of \$5 million, **11:91**
- Transaction, nature of, **11:7**
- Transactional organization
  - Generally, **11:171 to 11:188**
  - Business combinations, **11:187, 11:188**
  - Employee offerings, **11:178**
  - Institutional private placements
    - Generally, **11:172 to 11:177**
    - Covenants, **11:177**
    - Debt securities, **11:174**
    - Direct negotiations, **11:175**
    - Established issuer, **11:173**
    - Representations and covenants, **11:177**
    - Substantial investment, **11:176**
  - Placements. Institutional private placements, above this group
  - Private placements. Institutional private placements, above this group
  - Promotional offerings
    - Generally, **11:179 to 11:186**
    - Mom and pop start-up, **11:180**
    - Tax shelter
      - Generally, **11:182 to 11:186**
      - Expenses of offering, **11:186**
      - Issuer, nature of, **11:183**
      - Sales and investor participation, **11:185**
      - Securities, nature of, **11:184**
      - Venture capital, **11:181**
    - Tax shelter. Promotional offerings, above this group
  - Trusts, Rule 501(a)(7), **11:97**
  - Twilight Zone, **11:157**
  - § D2 million, offerings up to, **11:117**
  - Units, number of, **11:126 to 11:128**
  - Venture capital, **11:181**
  - Written disclosure. Information, above

**NONREPORTING COMPANIES**

**Restricted and Controlled Securities** (this index)

**NONRESIDENTS**

**Intrastate Offerings Under Section 3(a)(11) and Rule 147A** (this index)

**NONRESTRICTED SECURITIES**

Reorganization with court or agency approval under Section 3(a)(10), **3:81, 3:94**

**NOTES**

**Real Estate Mortgage Securities, Section 4(5)**  
(this index)  
Rescinded Rule 148, **1:76**

**NOTICE AND KNOWLEDGE**

Accredited investors, **14:7**

**Limited Offering Exemptions, Regulation D**  
(this index)

Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A, **6:46, 6:47, 6:98**

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:200**

Private resales, Rule 144A, **10A:5, 10A:42**

**Reorganization** (this index)  
Rescinded Rule 237 § 3(b), **1:55**  
Rescinded Rule 240 § 3(b), **1:64**  
Rescinded Rule 242 § 3(b), **1:73**

**Restricted and Controlled Securities** (this index)  
Section 3(b) and 3(c), **8:14**  
Violations, Section 12(a)(2), **16:118, 16:119**

**NSMIA**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D  
Charts  
After NSMIA, exemption based on Rule 506, **App 7I**  
Prior to NSMIA, explicit efforts to coordinate directly with Rule 506, **App 7K**  
State Blue Sky Laws, Rule 506 transactions  
Generally, **7:280**  
Prior to NSMIA, **7:281 to 7:284**  
Security futures products and standardized options, **5A:9**

**OBJECTION**

Reorganization with court or agency approval under Section 3(a)(10), **3:14, 3:54, 3:77**

**OCCUPATION**

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:66**

**OFFER**

Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), **2:15, 2:23, 2:48**

**OFFEREE**

Accredited investors, **14:3**

**Intrastate Offerings Under Section 3(a)(11) and Rule 147A** (this index)

**Limited Offering Exemptions, Regulation D**  
(this index)

**OFFEREE—Cont'd**

**Nonpublic Offerings** (this index)  
 Real estate mortgage securities, Section 4(5),  
**1:112, 1:115**  
 Rescission offers, **16:24**

**OFFERINGS**

**Cross-Border Rights Offerings, Exchange Offers and Business Combinations** (this index)  
**Extraterritorial Application of Registration Requirements, Regulation S** (this index)  
**Intrastate Offerings Under Section 3(a)(11) and Rule 147A** (this index)  
**Limited Offering Exemptions, Regulation D** (this index)  
**Mini-Registration Under Section 3(b), Regulation A** (this index)  
**Nonpublic Offerings** (this index)  
 Private resales, Rule 144A, **10A:11**  
 Reorganization with court or agency approval under Section 3(a)(10), **3:79**  
 Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:62**  
 Rescinded Rule 234 § 3(b), **1:43**  
 Rescinded Rule 235 § 3(b), **1:47**  
 Rescinded Rule 240 § 3(b), **1:60**  
 Rescinded Rule 242 § 3(b), **1:68, 1:69**  
**Seller** (this index)  
 Summary of types of offerings not integrated under the safe harbor and fact sheet for changes to private offering regime, **App 1C**  
 Unlawful offers, **16:16 to 16:18**  
 Violations, Section 12(a)(1), **16:37, 16:54**

**OFFERINGS TO ACCREDITED INVESTORS, SECTION 4(A)(5)**

Generally, **14:1 et seq.**  
 Disclosure obligations, **14:4**  
 Evaluation, **14:8**  
 Limitation on amount, **14:2**  
 Limitations on offerees and purchasers, **14:3**  
 Manner of offering, **14:5**  
 Notice of sales, **14:7**  
 Resales, **14:6**

**OFFEROR**

**Nonpublic Offerings** (this index)  
 Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), **2:43 to 2:45**  
 Rescission offers, **16:23**

**OFFICERS AND DIRECTORS**

Liable persons, Section 12(a)(2), **16:87**  
 Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:70, 7:90**  
**Mini-Registration Under Section 3(b), Regulation A** (this index)

**OFFICERS AND DIRECTORS—Cont'd**

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:94**  
 Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), **2:64**  
 Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:39**  
 Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:44**

**OFFSHORE ACTS AND MATTERS**

**Extraterritorial Application of Registration Requirements, Regulation S** (this index)  
 Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:139**  
 Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:35**

**OIL, GAS, OR OTHER MINERAL RIGHTS**

Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:10 to 9:13**

**OMISSION**

Ignorance of untruth or omission, Section 12(a)(2), **16:109, 16:110**

**OPPORTUNITY TO OBJECT**

Reorganization with court or agency approval under Section 3(a)(10), **3:14, 3:54, 3:77**

**OPTIONS**

Call options  
 Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:30, 10:185, 10:224**  
 Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:33**  
**Employee Stock Option Plan** (this index)  
 Listed options, sales through exercise of, **10:33**  
 Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:30, 10:33, 10:167.50, 10:224**  
 Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:107**  
**Security Futures Products and Standardized Options** (this index)

**ORAL COMMUNICATIONS**

Violations, Section 12(a)(2), **16:99, 16:101**

**ORAL REPRESENTATIONS**

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:203**

**ORDER**

**Brokers' Special Exemption, Section 4(a)(4)** (this index)  
**Mini-Registration Under Section 3(b), Regulation A** (this index)  
 Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:161**

**ORDER FORMS**

Section 3(b) and 3(c), **8:1 to 8:3**

**ORDERLY TRANSITION OF CONTROL**

Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), **2:10**

**ORDINARY DELAYS**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:111**

**ORIGINAL ISSUER**

Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), **2:27**

**OUTSIDERS**

Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), **2:65**

**OUTSTANDING SECURITIES**

Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), **2:7, 2:8, 2:12**

Section 3(b) and 3(c), **8:33**

**OVER-THE-COUNTER MARKET**

Brokers' special exemption, Section 4(a)(4), **13:40**

**OWNERSHIP**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:8, 7:76, 7:276**

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:100**

Private resales, Rule 144A, **10A:39**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:46, 10:193**

Rescinded Rule 240 § 3(b), **1:62**

**PARENT AND SUBSIDIARY CORPORATIONS**

Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), **2:31, 2:36**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:17 to 10:20, 10:82**

Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:16, 9:34 to 9:36**

**PARTICIPANTS AND PARTICIPATION**

**Dealers' Exemption, Section 4(a)(3)** (this index)

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:185**

Reorganization with court or agency approval under Section 3(a)(10), **3:21, 3:28**

**Routine Trading Under Section 4(a)(1)** (this index)

Section 3(b) and 3(c), **8:22 to 8:25**

**PARTIES**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:242**

Real estate mortgage securities, Section 4(5), **1:118**

Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:63**

Violations

Section 12(a)(1), **16:40**

Section 12(a)(2), **16:78**

**PARTLY CASH**

Reorganization with court or agency approval under Section 3(a)(10), **3:8, 3:39, 3:61**

**PARTNERSHIPS**

Intrastate offerings under Section 3(a)(11), **4:14, 4:43**

Liable persons, Section 12(a)(2), **16:88**

**PARTNERSHIPS—Cont'd**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:70, 7:92, 7:311**

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:94, 11:109**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:102, 10:109**

**PART OF ISSUE**

Intrastate offerings under Section 3(a)(11), **4:10 to 4:12, 4:20**

**PART OF OFFERING**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:103**

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:31**

**PAR VALUE**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:70, 10:71**

**PAUSE**

Unregistered soliciting entities, public alert, **App 11**

**PAYMENT**

Consideration paid, Section 12(a)(1), **16:57**

Crowdfunding, third parties, intermediary requirements, **15:22**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:80**

Rescinded Rule 234 § 3(b), **1:42**

Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:12**

**PERIODIC REPORTING**

Extraterritorial application of registration requirements, Regulation S, **15A:39**

**PERMANENT SUSPENSION**

Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A, **6:112, 6:113**

**PERSON**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:53**

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:84**

**Restricted and Controlled Securities** (this index)

**PERSON RESIDENT**

**Intrastate Offerings Under Section 3(a)(11) and Rule 147A** (this index)

**PINTER v. DAHL**

Liable persons, Section 12(a)(1), **16:42 to 16:46**

Liable persons, Section 12(a)(2), **16:80 to 16:83**

**PIPE TRANSACTIONS**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:257**

**PLACEMENTS**

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:11, 11:12**

**PLACEMENTS—Cont'd**

**Nonpublic Offerings** (this index)  
 Private resales, Rule 144A, **10A:51 to 10A:53**  
 Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:96**

**PLEDGE**

**Restricted and Controlled Securities** (this index)  
 Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:81, 9:82**

**PORTFOLIO**

Rescinded Rule 148, **1:79**

**POST-EFFECTIVE PERIOD**

Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A, **6:82, 6:83, 6:89 to 6:92**  
 Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:24**

**POST-FILING TRANSACTIONS**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:255**

**POST-FILING VIOLATIONS**

Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A, **6:103**

**POST-ORDER FILING**

Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A, **6:111**

**PRECAUTIONARY MEASURES**

**Intrastate Offerings Under Section 3(a)(11) and Rule 147A** (this index)

**PREDECESSOR**

**Limited Offering Exemptions, Regulation D** (this index)  
**Mini-Registration Under Section 3(b), Regulation A** (this index)

**PREDOMINANT BUSINESS**

Intrastate offerings under Section 3(a)(11), **4:26, 4:27**

**PREEFFECTIVE PERIOD**

**Mini-Registration Under Section 3(b), Regulation A** (this index)

**PREEMPTION**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:237, 7:280**

**PREEXISTING RELATIONSHIP**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:149, 7:154, 7:160**  
 Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:145, 11:150, 11:155**

**PREFERRED EXEMPTIONS**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:300**

**PREFILING PERIOD**

Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A, **6:79**  
 Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:22**

**PREFILING TRANSACTIONS**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:254**

**PREFILING WRITTEN SOLICITATIONS OF INTEREST**

Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A, **6:87**

**PRESS ACCESS**

Extraterritorial application of registration requirements, Regulation S, **15A:17**

**PRESUMPTION**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:29, 10:208 to 10:211**

**PRESUMPTIVE UNDERWRITER DOCTRINE**

Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:56 to 9:59, 9:83, 9:106**

**PRICE**

**Aggregate Offering Price** (this index)  
**Aggregate Sales Price** (this index)  
**Mini-Registration Under Section 3(b), Regulation A** (this index)  
 Rescinded Rule 235 § 3(b), limitations on offering price, **1:47**  
**Restricted and Controlled Securities** (this index)

**PRIMARY DISTRIBUTION**

**Routine Trading Under Section 4(a)(1)** (this index)

**PRIMARY OFFERINGS**

Intrastate offerings under Section 3(a)(11), **4:5 to 4:7, 4:9**

**PRINCIPAL**

Private resales, Rule 144A, **10A:37**  
 Rescinded Rule 234 § 3(b), **1:42**

**PRIOR ACTS AND MATTERS**

**Limited Offering Exemptions, Regulation D** (this index)

**PRIVATE BUSINESS DEVELOPMENT COMPANIES, RULE 501(A)(2)**

**Limited Offering Exemptions, Regulation D** (this index)  
 Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:88**

**PRIVATE EQUITY LINES**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:258**

## PRIVATE INVESTMENT IN PUBLIC EQUITY (PIPE) TRANSACTIONS

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:257**

## PRIVATE ISSUERS

Section 3(b) and 3(c), **8:34, 8:36**

## PRIVATE OFFERINGS

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:256 to 7:259, 7:260, 7:261, 7:275**

Summary of types of offerings not integrated under the safe harbor and fact sheet for changes to private offering regime, **App 1C**

## PRIVATE PLACEMENT MEMORANDUM

Sample legends, **App 7D**

## PRIVATE PLACEMENTS

Nonpublic Offerings (this index)

## PRIVATE RESALES

Generally, **10A:1 et seq.**

Account eligibility, **10A:27**

Administrative interpretations, **10A:47, 10A:47.10, 10A:47.20**

All Rule 144A placements, **10A:51**

Amount. Eligible purchasers, below

Assessment, overall, **10A:58**

Banks and savings and loan associations, **10A:38, 10A:39**

Broker-dealers, **10A:35 to 10A:37**

Brokers, **10A:13, 10A:14**

Buyer

Notification, **10A:5, 10A:42**

Qualified institutional buyers, **10A:24, 10A:34**

Calculation, qualifying amount, **10A:29**

Capital, uniform net capital rule, **10A:12**

Combined securities ownership and net worth test, **10A:39**

Conditional general solicitation, **10A:7**

Consolidated financial statements, **10A:32**

Convertible and exchange securities and warrants, **10A:23**

Cost, valuation at, **10A:31**

Credit arrangements by brokers or dealers, Regulation T, **10A:13, 10A:14**

Dealers, **10A:13, 10A:14**

Designated entities. Eligible purchasers, below

Domestic issuers, placements by, **10A:52**

Eligible account, acting for, **10A:27**

Eligible purchasers

Generally, **10A:4, 10A:24**

Amount. Qualifying amount, below this group

Banks and savings and loan associations, **10A:38, 10A:39**

Combined securities ownership and net worth test, **10A:39**

## PRIVATE RESALES—Cont'd

Eligible purchasers—Cont'd

Designated entities

Generally, **10A:25 to 10A:41**

Eligible account, acting for, **10A:27**

Qualifying amount, below this group

Evidence, **10A:40, 10A:40.50, 10A:41**

Investment companies, **10A:33**

Qualified institutional buyers, **10A:24, 10A:34**

Qualifying amount

Generally, **10A:28 to 10A:32**

Calculation, **10A:29**

Consolidated financial statements, **10A:32**

Dealer meets, **10A:36**

Excluded securities, **10A:30**

Valuation at cost, **10A:31**

Registered broker-dealers, **10A:35 to 10A:37**

Reliance, basis for, **10A:41**

Riskless principal, dealer as, **10A:37**

SEC compliance and disclosure interpretations, **10A:40.50**

Eligible securities

Generally, **10A:3, 10A:18 to 10A:23**

Convertible and exchange securities and warrants, **10A:23**

Publicly traded securities, **10A:20**

“Same class as,” **10A:21 to 10A:23**

Substantially identical securities, **10A:22**

Evidence, **10A:40, 10A:41**

Exchange securities, **10A:23**

Excluded securities, **10A:30**

Financial statements, **10A:32**

Florida 2024 disqualification rule, **10A:59**

Foreign issuers, **10A:50 to 10A:53**

General solicitation, prohibition against, **10A:46, 10A:47, 10A:47.10, 10A:47.20**

Identical securities, **10A:22**

Information requirements, **10A:6, 10A:43 to 10A:45**

Institutional buyers, **10A:24, 10A:34**

Institutional investors, **10A:54**

Interpretations, administrative, **10A:47, 10A:47.10, 10A:47.20**

Investment companies, **10A:9 to 10A:11, 10A:33, 10A:57**

Investors, institutional, **10A:54**

Issuers, **10A:50 to 10A:53**

Limitations and restrictions, **10A:11, 10A:47.20**

Limited solicitations, **10A:47.20**

Liquidity requirements, **10A:10**

Market, **10A:55, 10A:56**

Net capital, **10A:12**

Net worth test, **10A:39**

Nonpublic offering limitation, **10A:11**

Notification of buyer, **10A:5**

**PRIVATE RESALES—Cont'd**

Notification to buyer, **10A:42**  
 Offerings, nonpublic offering limitation, **10A:11**  
 Overall assessment, **10A:58**  
 Ownership, **10A:39**  
 Persons who benefit from Rule, **10A:8**  
 Placements, **10A:51 to 10A:53**  
 Principal, riskless, **10A:37**  
 Publicly traded securities, **10A:20**  
 Public markets, **10A:55**  
 Purchasers  
   Eligible purchasers, above  
   Notification to buyer, **10A:5, 10A:42**  
 Qualified institutional buyers, **10A:24, 10A:34**  
 Qualifying amount. Eligible purchasers, above  
 Registered broker-dealers, **10A:35 to 10A:37**  
 Regulation M, **10A:15, 10A:16**  
 Regulation S, **10A:17**  
 Regulation T, **10A:13, 10A:14**  
 Rescinded Rule 144(k), resales by certain nonaffiliates, **1:82 to 1:91**  
 Research reports under Rules 138 and 139, **10A:47.10**  
**Restricted and Controlled Securities** (this index)  
 Riskless principal, dealer as, **10A:37**  
**Routine Trading Under Section 4(a)(1)** (this index)  
 Rule 144A, **10A:59**  
 Rule 144A, generally, **10A:1 et seq.**  
 "Same class as," **10A:21 to 10A:23**  
 Savings and loan associations, **10A:38, 10A:39**  
 Section 11(d)(1), **10A:14**  
 Solicitation, **10A:46, 10A:47, 10A:47.10, 10A:47.20**  
 Status of securities sold under, **10A:48**  
 Substantially identical securities, **10A:22**  
 Trading practice Rules, Regulation M before 1997, **10A:15**  
 Uniform net capital Rule, **10A:12**  
 U.S. public markets, impact of, **10A:55**  
 Valuation at cost, **10A:31**  
 Warrants, **10A:23**

**PRIVATE SECTOR**

Real estate mortgage securities, Section 4(5), **1:98, 1:99**

**PRIVATE TRANSACTIONS**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:253 to 7:255**

**PROBLEMATIC PROBLEMS RELEASE**

Extraterritorial application of registration requirements, Regulation S, **15A:38**

**PROCEEDINGS**

FINRA enforcement proceedings, **16:7**

**PROCEEDINGS—Cont'd**

SEC administrative law judge proceedings, constitutional challenges, **16:7**

**PROCEEDS**

Intrastate offerings under Section 3(a)(11), **4:37**  
 Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A, **6:68**

**PROMISSORY NOTES**

**Restricted and Controlled Securities** (this index)

**PROMOTIONAL COMPANIES**

**Mini-Registration Under Section 3(b), Regulation A** (this index)

**PROMOTIONAL OFFERINGS**

**Nonpublic Offerings** (this index)

**PROPER FORUM**

Violations, Section 12(a)(2), **16:74**

**PROSPECTUS**

Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A, **6:50**

Violations, Section 12(a)(2), **16:99, 16:100**

**PROTECTION AGREEMENTS**

Whistleblower program, violations, **16:122**

**PROXY**

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:75**  
 Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), **2:68**  
 Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:43**

**PUBLIC AVAILABILITY**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:92**  
 Source materials, **1:21**

**PUBLIC DISCLOSURE POLICY**

Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), **2:3**

**PUBLIC EQUITY**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, PIPE transactions, **7:257**

**PUBLIC INFORMATION**

**Restricted and Controlled Securities** (this index)

**PUBLIC INTEREST**

Violations, **16:4**

**PUBLICLY TRADED SECURITIES**

Private resales, Rule 144A, **10A:20**

**PUBLIC MARKETS**

Private resales, Rule 144A, **10A:55**

**PUBLIC OFFERINGS**

Limitation of actions, Section 12(a)(1), **16:54**

**PUBLIC OFFERINGS—Cont'd**

- Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D
- Private transactions in contemplation of public offering, **7:253 to 7:255**
- Restructured transactions
  - Limited public offerings, **7:260**
  - Private to public, **7:256 to 7:259**
  - Public to private, **7:260, 7:261**

**PUBLIC PRIVATE TRANSACTIONS**

- Resale of Securities Acquired Under Section 3(a)(9), **2:71, 2:75**

**PUBLIC RESALES**

- Rescinded Rule 144(k), resales by certain nonaffiliates, **1:82 to 1:91**
- Restricted and Controlled Securities** (this index)

**PURCHASE PRICE**

- Restricted and Controlled Securities** (this index)

**PURCHASER**

- Accredited investors, limitations on offerees and purchasers, **14:3**
- Brokers' special exemption, Section 4(a)(4), **13:33**
- Dealers' exemption, Section 4(a)(3), **12:31**
- Intrastate Offerings Under Section 3(a)(11) and Rule 147A** (this index)
- Limited Offering Exemptions, Regulation D** (this index)
- Nonpublic Offerings** (this index)
- Private Resales** (this index)
  - Real estate mortgage securities, Section 4(5), **1:112, 1:115, 1:121**
  - Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:64, 10:153**
  - Rescinded Rule 242 § 3(b), **1:70**
  - Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:22, 9:28, 9:30, 9:33**
  - Section 3(b) and 3(c), **8:9**
  - Section 12(a)(2), refuting buyer's allegation, **16:110**
  - Standing to sue, Section 12(a)(2), **16:76**
  - Violations, **16:6, 16:40, 16:76, 16:78**

**PURCHASER REPRESENTATIVE**

- Limited Offering Exemptions, Regulation D** (this index)
- Nonpublic Offerings** (this index)
  - Section 3(b) and 3(c), **8:10**

**PUT OPTIONS**

- Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:33**
- Security futures products and standardized options, **5A:9**

**QUALIFICATIONS AND DISQUALIFICATIONS**

- Limited Offering Exemptions, Regulation D** (this index)
- Nonpublic Offerings** (this index)
- Private Resales, Rule 144A** (this index)
- Rescinded Rule 242 § 3(b)** (this index)
- Section 3(b) and 3(c), **8:18 to 8:20**

**QUARTERLY REPORTING**

- Extraterritorial application of registration requirements, Regulation S, **15A:7**

**RAILROAD CARS**

- Intrastate offerings under Section 3(a)(11), **4:30**

**RAISING CAPITAL**

- Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:221**

**RALSTON PURINA v. SEC**

- Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:111, 9:112, 9:114, 9:115**

**REAL ESTATE MORTGAGE SECURITIES, SECTION 4(5)**

- Assignment. Nonassignable contracts for real estate mortgage notes, Section 4(5)(B), below
  - Banking institutions, securities originated by, Section 4(5)(A)(i), **1:111 to 1:113**
  - Bonds, mortgage backed, **1:104**
  - Collateralized mortgage obligations (CMOs) and real estate mortgage investment conduits (REMICs), **1:106**
  - Contracts and agreements. Nonassignable contracts for real estate mortgage notes, Section 4(5)(B), below
  - Corporations, **1:99**
  - Derivative securities. Mortgage backed securities, below
  - Eligible securities, **1:110**
  - FHLMC, **1:97**
  - FNMA, **1:94 to 1:96**
  - GNMA, **1:94 to 1:96, 1:102**
  - Government-sponsored housing enterprises
    - FHLMC, **1:97**
    - FNMA and GNMA, **1:94 to 1:96**
  - Housing enterprises. Government-sponsored housing enterprises, above
  - HUD approved mortgagees, securities originated by, Section 4(5)(A)(ii), **1:114 to 1:116**
  - Loans, generally, **1:92**
  - Mortgage backed bonds, **1:104**
  - Mortgage backed securities
    - Generally, **1:100 to 1:107**
    - Bonds, mortgage backed, **1:104**
    - Collateralized mortgage obligations (CMOs) and real estate mortgage investment

**REAL ESTATE MORTGAGE SECURITIES,  
SECTION 4(5)—Cont'd**

Mortgage backed securities—Cont'd  
    conduits (REMICs), **1:106**  
Derivative securities, generally, **1:107**  
GNMA mortgage backed securities, **1:102**  
Mortgage backed bonds, **1:104**  
Mortgage pass-through securities, **1:101, 1:102**  
Mortgage pay-through securities, **1:105**  
Multiple class structures and derivative securities, generally, **1:107**  
Real estate mortgage investment conduits (REMICs), collateralized mortgage obligations (CMOs) and, **1:106**  
Senior-subordinate pass-through securities, **1:103**  
Mortgage pass-through securities, **1:101, 1:102**  
Mortgage pay-through securities, **1:105**  
Multiple class structures and derivative securities, generally, **1:107**  
Nonassignable contracts for real estate mortgage notes, Section 4(5)(B)  
    Generally, **1:117 to 1:122**  
Contracts, generally, **1:119**  
Parties, **1:118**  
Purchaser of securities under contract, **1:121**  
Seller of securities under contract, **1:120**  
    Terms of sale, **1:122**  
Notes  
    Nonassignable contracts for real estate mortgage notes, Section 4(5)(B), above  
    Real estate mortgage notes, Section 4(5)(A), below  
    Resale of real estate mortgage notes, Section 4(5)(C), **1:123**  
Offeree-purchaser, **1:112, 1:115**  
Parties, **1:118**  
Private sector, **1:98, 1:99**  
Purchaser, **1:112, 1:115, 1:121**  
Real estate mortgage investment conduits (REMICs), collateralized mortgage obligations (CMOs) and, **1:106**  
Real estate mortgage notes, Section 4(5)(A)  
    Generally, **1:109 to 1:113**  
    Banking institutions, securities originated by, Section 4(5)(A)(i), **1:111 to 1:113**  
    Eligible securities, **1:110**  
    HUD approved mortgagees, securities originated by, Section 4(5)(A)(ii), **1:114 to 1:116**  
    Offeree-purchaser, **1:112, 1:115**  
    Terms of sale, **1:113, 1:116**  
Resale of real estate mortgage notes, Section 4(5)(C), **1:123**  
Rescinded section 4(5), generally, **1:108**  
Resolution trust corporation, **1:99**

**REAL ESTATE MORTGAGE SECURITIES,  
SECTION 4(5)—Cont'd**

Section 4(5)(A)(i), **1:111 to 1:113**  
Section 4(5)(A)(ii), **1:114 to 1:116**  
Section 4(5)(B). Nonassignable contracts for real estate mortgage notes, Section 4(5)(B), above  
Section 4(5)(C), **1:123**  
Seller of securities under contract, **1:120**  
Senior-subordinate pass-through securities, **1:103**  
Terms of sale, **1:113, 1:116, 1:122**  
Trust corporation, **1:99**

**REASONABLE ATTEMPT**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:249**

**RECAPITALIZATION**

Guidance and interpretations, SEC, **2:2**  
Interpretations, **2:2**  
Interpretations, SEC guidance, **2:2**  
SEC guidance and interpretations, **2:2**

**RECAPITALIZATIONS**

Generally, **2:1 et seq.**  
Affiliates and nonaffiliates  
    Generally, **2:30 to 2:36, 2:43 to 2:48**  
    Assumption of obligation, merger of nonaffiliates, **2:30, 2:31**  
    Guaranteed obligations  
        Generally, **2:43 to 2:48**  
        Guarantees as part of exchange offer, **2:48**  
        Guarantees issued as part of merger, **2:47**  
        Guarantor and issuer as offerors, **2:43**  
        Guarantor as offeror, **2:44**  
        Issuer as offeror, **2:45**  
        Nonaffiliates, **2:46 to 2:48**  
    Original issuer disappears in reorganization  
        Assumption of obligations, **2:30, 2:31**  
        Three-party merger, **2:34**  
        Two-party merger, **2:30, 2:31, 2:33**  
    Assumption of obligation, **2:30, 2:31, 2:36**  
Bankruptcy, **2:50**  
Charter or contract amendment, **2:18**  
Commissions. Remuneration or commission, absence of, below  
Contract amendment, **2:18**  
Contractual obligations, compliance with, **2:6**  
Correction of improperly issued securities, **2:11**  
Disappearance. Original issuer disappears in reorganization, below  
Disclosure, **2:3**  
Discretion of issuer, **2:20**  
Dissimilarity of securities, **2:21**  
Dissolution of subsidiary, **2:36**  
Evaluation of Section 3(a)(9), **2:78**

**RECAPITALIZATIONS—Cont'd**

Exchange  
 Agreement, **2:16 to 2:19**  
 Exclusively by exchange, below  
 Method of, **2:14**  
 Offer, **2:15**  
 Reasons for, **2:5**  
 Security, **2:24**  
 Terms of, **2:20, 2:21**  
 Exclusively by exchange  
 Generally, **2:51 to 2:59**  
 No new consideration, **2:51**  
 Revised rule 152a—Integration of Offerings  
 Doctrine, **2:58**  
 Rule 149, **2:56**  
 Rule 150, **2:57**  
 Special administrative interpretations, **2:55 to 2:58**  
 Waiver of dividends and interest, **2:53, 2:54**  
 Exclusively with security holders, **2:60 to 2:62**  
 Financial advisers, **2:65**  
 Guaranteed obligations  
 Generally, **2:42 to 2:48**  
 Affiliates, **2:43 to 2:45**  
 Guarantees as part of exchange offer, **2:48**  
 Guarantees issued as part of merger, **2:47**  
 Guarantor and issuer as offerors, **2:43**  
 Guarantor as offeror, **2:44**  
 Issuer as offeror, **2:45**  
 Nonaffiliates, **2:46 to 2:48**  
 Identification of problem, **2:28**  
 Identity of issuer  
 Generally, **2:26 to 2:50**  
 Bankruptcy, **2:50**  
 Guaranteed obligations, above  
 Original issuer changes legal form, **2:27**  
 Original issuer disappears in reorganization, below  
 Original issuer survives reorganization, below  
 Voting trusts, **2:49**  
 Integration, **2:62**  
 Investor relations firms, **2:65**  
 Issuer  
 Guaranteed obligations, **2:45**  
 Identity of issuer, above  
 Remuneration or commission, absence of, **2:66 to 2:68**  
 Maintenance of control, **2:9, 2:10**  
**Merger** (this index)  
 New debt securities, **2:41**  
 New equity securities, **2:38 to 2:40**  
 Non-American security holder, **2:72, 2:73**  
 No new consideration, **2:51**  
 Nonmerger transactions between affiliates, **2:35, 2:36**

**RECAPITALIZATIONS—Cont'd**

Offer, **2:23**  
 Officers, directors, and employees, **2:64**  
 Orderly transition of control, **2:10**  
 Original issuer changes legal form, **2:27**  
 Original issuer disappears in reorganization  
 Generally, **2:28 to 2:36**  
 Assumption of obligation, **2:30, 2:31, 2:36**  
 Dissolution of subsidiary, **2:36**  
 Identification of problem, **2:28**  
 Merger of affiliates, **2:32 to 2:34**  
 Merger of nonaffiliate into subsidiary of new issuer, **2:30, 2:31**  
 Nonmerger transactions between affiliates, **2:35, 2:36**  
 Organization, method of, **2:29**  
 Parent assumes obligations, **2:36**  
 Three-party merger, **2:34**  
 Transfer of business assets to new entity, **2:35**  
 Two-party merger, **2:30, 2:33**  
 Original issuer survives reorganization  
 Generally, **2:37 to 2:50**  
 Multi-party merger, **2:39**  
 New debt securities, **2:41**  
 New equity securities, **2:38 to 2:40**  
 Reverse merger, **2:40**  
 Share exchange, **2:38**  
 Outsiders, **2:65**  
 Outstanding securities, **2:7, 2:8, 2:12**  
 Parent assumes obligations, **2:36**  
 Proxy solicitation, **2:68**  
 Public disclosure policy, **2:3**  
 Public private transactions, **2:71, 2:75**  
 Redemption agreement, **2:17**  
 Remuneration or commission, absence of  
 Generally, **2:63 to 2:68**  
 Financial advisers, **2:65**  
 Investor relations firms, **2:65**  
 Issuer, risk to, **2:66 to 2:68**  
 Officers, directors, and employees, **2:64**  
 Outsiders, **2:65**  
 Presence of remuneration or commission, **2:68**  
 Proxy solicitation, **2:68**  
 Rule 145, **2:66 to 2:68**  
 Reorganization  
 Original issuer disappears in reorganization, above  
 Original issuer survives reorganization, above  
 Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:132, 10:134, 10:135**  
 Resale of securities acquired under Section 3(a)(9)  
 Generally, **2:69 to 2:76**  
 Non-American security holder, **2:72, 2:73**  
 Public private transactions, **2:71, 2:75**

**RECAPITALIZATIONS—Cont'd**

Resale of securities acquired under Section 3(a)(9)—Cont'd  
 Restricted securities surrendered in exchange, **2:74 to 2:76**  
 Transactions outside Rule 144, **2:72, 2:73**  
 Unrestricted securities surrendered in exchange, **2:70 to 2:73**  
 Restricted securities surrendered in exchange, **2:74 to 2:76**  
 Revised rule 152a—Integration of Offerings Doctrine, **2:58**  
 Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:37**  
 Rule 145, **2:66 to 2:68**  
 Rule 149, **2:56**  
 Rule 150, **2:57**  
 Sales, **2:23**  
 SEC compliance and disclosure interpretations  
 Section 3(a)(9), **2:22.50**  
 Section 3(a)(9), generally, **2:1 et seq.**  
 Settlement of litigation, **2:13**  
 Share exchange, **2:38**  
 Special administrative interpretations, **2:55 to 2:58**  
 Standby agreement, **2:19**  
 State Blue Sky Law, compatibility with, **2:77**  
 Survival. Original issuer survives reorganization, above  
 Takeovers, protection against, **2:9**  
 Transfer of business assets to new entity, **2:35**  
 Trust Indenture Act, **2:25**  
 Unrestricted securities surrendered in exchange, **2:70 to 2:73**  
 Voting trusts, **2:49**  
 Waiver of dividends and interest, **2:53, 2:54**

**RECIPIENT**

Restricted securities, Rule 144(a)(3), **10:54, 10:55, 10:57, 10:58**

**RECORDS AND RECORDING**

Brokers' special exemption, Section 4(a)(4), **13:37**  
 Crowdfunding  
 Funding portals, **15:28**  
**Limited Offering Exemptions, Regulation D** (this index)  
**Mini-Registration Under Section 3(b), Regulation A** (this index)  
**Nonpublic Offerings** (this index)  
 Notice, filing of, **8:14**  
 Reorganization with court or agency approval under Section 3(a)(10), **3:18**  
 Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:22, 10:85, 10:234**  
 Rescinded Rule 240 § 3(b), **1:64**  
 Rescinded Rule 242 § 3(b), **1:73**

**RECRUITMENT PROGRAMS**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:152**  
 Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:148**

**REDEMPTION AGREEMENT**

Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), **2:17**

**REDESIGNATIONS**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:55**  
 Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:86**

**REFORM**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:54, 7:55, 7:163 to 7:165**  
 Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A, **6:4, 6:4.50**  
 Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:85, 11:86**

**REGISTRATION**

Generally, **1:7 to 1:12**  
 Affiliate of issuer, **1:9**  
 Broker-dealer, **1:11**  
 Crowdfunding, funding portals, **15:24**  
 Exemptions, **15:25**

**Dealers' Exemption, Section 4(a)(3)** (this index)  
**Extraterritorial Application of Registration Requirements, Regulation S** (this index)

Finders, **1:12**  
 Guidance on registering as a portal, regulation crowdfunding, **15:17**  
**Limited Offering Exemptions, Regulation D** (this index)

**Mini-Registration Under Section 3(b), Regulation A** (this index)  
 Nonaffiliate of issuer, **1:10**  
 Private resales, Rule 144A, **10A:35 to 10A:37**

Reorganization with court or agency approval under Section 3(a)(10), **3:30 to 3:32**  
 Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:21 to 10:24, 10:34**  
 Rescission offers, **16:28**  
 Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:91**

**REGULATION**

Analysis of Regulation A+ offerings from 2015-2024, **App 1K**

**REGULATION A**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:21**  
**Mini-Registration Under Section 3(b), Regulation A** (this index)

**REGULATION CROWDFUNDING**

Crowdfunding (this index)

**REGULATION D**

**Limited Offering Exemptions, Regulation D** (this index)

**REGULATION D—Cont'd**

Nonpublic Offerings (this index)  
Rescinded Rule 505 (this index)  
Sample Regulation D stock purchase agreement—corporate parties, **App 7N**

**REGULATION E**

Small business investment companies, securities of, **8:39 to 8:42**

**REGULATION M**

Private resales, Rule 144A, **10A:15, 10A:16**

**REGULATION OF SECURITY BASED SWAPS**

Trading of derivative securities, **5A:12**

**REGULATION S**

Extraterritorial Application of Registration Requirements, Regulation S (this index)

Private resales, Rule 144A, **10A:17**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, pre-Regulation S, **10:62**

**REGULATION SBSR**

Frequently asked questions, security based swaps, **5A:14**

**REGULATION T**

Private resales, Rule 144A, **10A:13, 10A:14**

**REGULATORY CHALLENGES**

Limited Offering Exemptions, Regulation D (this index)

**REHABILITATION OUTSIDE BANKRUPTCY CODE**

Reorganization with court or agency approval under Section 3(a)(10), **3:34**

**RELATIVES**

Family and Relatives (this index)

**RELEASE**

Dealers' exemption, Section 4(a)(3), **12:25 to 12:26.50**

Extraterritorial application of registration requirements, Regulation S, **15A:38 to 15A:40**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:43**

Rescission offers, **16:31**

**RELEVANCE**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:196 to 7:198**

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:54, 11:60, 11:64**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:175, 10:176**

**RELIANCE**

Extraterritorial application of registration requirements, Regulation S, **15A:45, 15A:46**

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:201**

**RELIANCE—Cont'd**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:86**

**REMOVAL**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:167, 7:240**

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:163**

**REMUNERATION**

Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A, **6:63**

Recapitalizations (this index)

Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:225**

**REORGANIZATION**

Agents and agency. Court or agency approval under Section 3(a)(10), below

Bankruptcy. Court or agency approval under Section 3(a)(10), below

Banks. **Holding Company** (this index)

Court or agency approval under Section 3(a)(10) Generally, **3:1 et seq.**

Abandoned claims, **3:9, 3:40, 3:41**

Affiliates and nonaffiliates, **3:45, 3:46, 3:57, 3:58**

Agency review. Solvent businesses, below this group

Any security, **3:6, 3:37, 3:59**

Appeal and review, **3:55, 3:64**

Attorney, recommendations of, **3:17**

Authorized approval

Solvent businesses, below

Bankruptcy Act, **3:26, 3:29, 3:49 to 3:52**

Bankruptcy Code

Financially troubled businesses, **3:23 to 3:25, 3:33**

Resale of securities

Generally, **3:85 to 3:95**

Outside Code, **3:92**

Section 1145(b)(1)(D), underwriter defined, **3:88**

Section 1145 exemptions, **3:89, 3:90**

Sections 1145(b)(1)(A), (B) and (C), underwriter defined, **3:87**

Stockbroker exemptions, **3:91, 3:92**

Transfer under Section 1145(a)(1) or 1145(a)(2), **3:89**

Transfer under Section 1145(a)(3), **3:90**

Underwriter defined, **3:86 to 3:88**

Cash, **3:39, 3:61**

Change or modification, **3:69**

Combinations of financially sound businesses, **3:93 to 3:95**

Debtor, **3:44 to 3:46**

Debtor and issuer, **3:43, 3:49**

Debtor but not issuer, **3:47, 3:51**

**REORGANIZATION—Cont'd**

Court or agency approval under Section 3(a)(10)  
 —Cont'd  
 Definition, **3:86 to 3:88**  
 Disclosure, **3:21, 3:35**  
 Discovery record, **3:18**  
 Distribution of securities, **3:11, 3:12**  
 Exchange  
   Financially troubled businesses, below  
   Resale of securities, **3:94, 3:95**  
   Settlement of litigation, below  
   Solvent businesses  
     Between affiliates, **3:57**  
     Between nonaffiliates, **3:58**  
     Requirements, **3:59 to 3:61**  
 Express authorization, **3:71 to 3:73, 3:76**  
 Fairness. Settlement of litigation, below this group  
 Fairness hearings. Hearings, below this group  
 Federal legislation, **3:23 to 3:26**  
 Financially sound business, **3:93 to 3:95**  
 Financially troubled businesses  
   Generally, **3:22 to 3:55**  
   Abandoned claims, **3:40, 3:41**  
   Any security, **3:37**  
   Bankruptcy Act, **3:26, 3:29, 3:49 to 3:52**  
   Bankruptcy Code, **3:23 to 3:25, 3:33**  
   Disclosure, **3:35**  
   In exchange, **3:38**  
   Exchange requirement, generally, **3:36 to 3:41**  
   Federal legislation, **3:23 to 3:26**  
   Judicial hearing, **3:53 to 3:55**  
   Judicial review, **3:55**  
   Notice and opportunity to object, **3:54**  
   Participation of SEC, **3:28**  
   Partly for cash, **3:39**  
   Registration, exemptions from, **3:30 to 3:32**  
   Rehabilitation outside Bankruptcy Code, **3:34**  
   SEC, role of, **3:27 to 3:29**  
   Section 364 claims, abandoned claims, **3:41**  
   Section 364(f), exemptions from registration, **3:30, 3:31**  
   Section 1145, exemptions from registration, **3:32**  
   Special federal legislation, **3:23 to 3:26**  
   Transferor of securities  
     Generally, **3:42 to 3:52**  
     Affiliates, **3:45**  
     Bankruptcy Act, transfers outside of, **3:49 to 3:52**  
     Debtor and issuer, **3:43, 3:49**  
     Debtor but not issuer, **3:47, 3:51**  
     Issuer but not debtor, **3:44 to 3:46, 3:50**  
     Neither issuer nor debtor, **3:48, 3:52**

**REORGANIZATION—Cont'd**

Court or agency approval under Section 3(a)(10)  
 —Cont'd  
 Financially troubled businesses—Cont'd  
 Transferor of securities—Cont'd  
   Nonaffiliates, **3:46**  
 Full disclosure, **3:21**  
 Hearing  
   Financially troubled businesses, **3:53 to 3:55**  
   Settlement of litigation, below this group  
   Solvent businesses, below this group  
 In exchange, **3:7, 3:38, 3:60**  
 Integrated offerings, **3:79**  
 Investigation of facts, **3:18**  
 Issuer  
   Financially troubled businesses, **3:43 to 3:46, 3:47, 3:49, 3:50**  
   Settlement of litigation, **3:11**  
 Judicial hearing  
   Financially troubled businesses, **3:53 to 3:55**  
   Settlement of litigation, below this group  
 Judicial review, **3:55, 3:64**  
 National Securities Markets Act of 1996, **3:3**  
 Neither issuer nor debtor, **3:48, 3:52**  
 Nonrestricted securities surrendered in exchange, combinations of financially sound businesses, **3:94**  
 Nonrestricted status of securities, **3:81**  
 Notice  
   Financially troubled businesses, **3:54**  
   Settlement of litigation, **3:14**  
   Solvent businesses, below this group  
 Objection, **3:14, 3:54, 3:77**  
 Offerings, integrated, **3:79**  
 Opportunity to object, **3:14, 3:54, 3:77**  
 Participation of SEC, **3:28**  
 Partly cash, **3:8**  
 Partly for cash, **3:39, 3:61**  
 Records and recording, **3:18**  
 Registration, exemptions from, **3:30 to 3:32**  
 Rehabilitation outside Bankruptcy Code, **3:34**  
 Resale of securities  
   Generally, **3:80 to 3:95**  
   Bankruptcy Code, above this group  
   Combinations of financially sound businesses, **3:93 to 3:95**  
   Nature of transaction, **3:83**  
   Nonrestricted securities, **3:81, 3:94**  
   Restricted securities, **3:81, 3:95**  
   Settlement of litigation, resale after, **3:84**  
   Status of securities, **3:81**  
   Status of selling security holder, **3:82**  
 Responses, **3:20**  
 Restricted securities, **3:81, 3:95**

**REORGANIZATION—Cont'd**

Court or agency approval under Section 3(a)(10)  
 —Cont'd  
 SEC, role of, **3:27 to 3:29**  
 Section 364 claims, abandoned claims, **3:41**  
 Section 364(f), exemptions from registration, **3:30, 3:31**  
 Section 1145, exemptions from registration, **3:32**  
 Section 1145(a)(1) or 1145(a)(2), transfer under, **3:89**  
 Section 1145(a)(3), transfer under, **3:90**  
 Section 1145(b)(1)(D), underwriter defined, **3:88**  
 Section 1145 exemptions, **3:89, 3:90**  
 Sections 1145(b)(1)(A), (B) and (C), underwriter defined, **3:87**  
 SEC v. Blinder Robinson & Co., **3:16**  
 Selling security holder, **3:82**  
 Settlement of litigation  
 Generally, **3:4 to 3:21**  
 Abandoned claims, **3:9**  
 Any security, **3:6**  
 Distribution of securities, **3:11, 3:12**  
 Exchange, generally, **3:5 to 3:9**  
 In exchange, **3:7**  
 Fairness. Judicial hearing and approval, below this group  
 Issuer, person distributing securities is, **3:11**  
 Judicial hearing and approval  
 Generally, **3:13 to 3:21**  
 Apparent alternatives to settlement, **3:19**  
 Attorney, recommendations of, **3:17**  
 Discovery record, **3:18**  
 Fairness, generally, **3:16 to 3:21**  
 Full disclosure, **3:21**  
 Investigation of facts, **3:18**  
 Notice and opportunity to object, **3:14**  
 Opportunity for direct participation in process of obtaining full disclosure, **3:21**  
 Responses, **3:20**  
 SEC v. Blinder Robinson & Co., **3:16**  
 Partly cash, **3:8**  
 Resale of securities, **3:84**  
 Transferor of securities, **3:10 to 3:12**  
 Solvent businesses  
 Generally, **3:56 to 3:78**  
 Agency review  
 Generally, **3:65 to 3:75**  
 Authorization of agency, but not mandatory hearing, **3:67**  
 Authorization of hearing, need for, **3:74**  
 Express authorization, **3:71 to 3:73**  
 Fairness hearing, need for, **3:75**

**REORGANIZATION—Cont'd**

Court or agency approval under Section 3(a)(10)  
 —Cont'd  
 Solvent businesses—Cont'd  
 Agency review—Cont'd  
 Fairness hearing held, no authorization given, **3:68**  
 Post-hearing modification of plan, **3:69**  
 Statutes, generally, **3:65**  
 Any security, **3:59**  
 Authorized approval. Notice and hearing, below this group  
 Exchange  
 Generally, **3:60**  
 Between affiliates, **3:57**  
 Between nonaffiliates, **3:58**  
 Requirements, **3:59 to 3:61**  
 Hearing. Notice and hearing, below this group  
 Notice and hearing  
 Generally, **3:63 to 3:78**  
 Agency review, above this group  
 Authorized approval, generally, **3:65 to 3:75**  
 Express authorization, **3:76**  
 Judicial review, **3:64**  
 Opportunity to object, notice of fairness hearing and, **3:77**  
 Standard of approval, **3:78**  
 Partly for cash, **3:61**  
 Transferor of securities, **3:62**  
 Special federal legislation, **3:23 to 3:26**  
 Status of securities, **3:81**  
 Status of selling security holder, **3:82**  
 Stockbroker exemptions, **3:91, 3:92**  
 Surrender in exchange, **3:94, 3:95**  
 Transfers  
 Financially troubled businesses, above this group  
 Section 1145(a)(1) or 1145(a)(2), **3:89**  
 Section 1145(a)(3), **3:90**  
 Settlement of litigation, **3:10 to 3:12**  
 Solvent businesses, **3:62**  
 Underwriter defined, **3:86 to 3:88**  
 Exchange. Court or agency approval under Section 3(a)(10), above  
 Fairness. Court or agency approval under Section 3(a)(10), above  
 Fairness hearings. Court or agency approval under Section 3(a)(10), above  
 Financially troubled businesses. Court or agency approval under Section 3(a)(10), above  
 Hearing. Court or agency approval under Section 3(a)(10), above  
**Holding Company** (this index)

**REORGANIZATION—Cont'd**

- Issuer. Court or agency approval under Section 3(a)(10), above
- Judicial hearing. Court or agency approval under Section 3(a)(10), above
- Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:54, 7:55**
- Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:85, 11:86**
- Notice. Court or agency approval under Section 3(a)(10), above
- Recapitalizations** (this index)
- Savings association. **Holding Company** (this index)
- Settlement of litigation. Court or agency approval under Section 3(a)(10), above

**REPORTS AND REPORTING**

- Extraterritorial application of registration requirements, Regulation S, **15A:5 to 15A:7, 15A:39**
- Form 8-K reporting, Exchange Act, **15A:6**
- Limited Offering Exemptions, Regulation D** (this index)
- Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A, **6:18, 6:92**
- Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:120**
- Private resales under Rule 144A, research reports under Rules 138 and 139, **10A:47.10**
- Restricted and Controlled Securities** (this index)

**REPRESENTATIONS AND COVENANTS**

- Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A, **6:83**
- Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:177, 11:203**
- Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:118**

**REPRESENTATIVES**

- Limited Offering Exemptions, Regulation D** (this index)
- Nonpublic Offerings** (this index)
- Regulation CE, coordinated exemptions for issues of securities exempted under State Law, **8:10**
- Violations
  - Section 12(a)(1), **16:40**
  - Section 12(a)(2), **16:78**

**REPURCHASE OFFER**

- California application for approval of repurchase offer, **App 1M**

**RESALE**

- Accredited investors, **14:6**
- Crowdfunding, restrictions, **15:30**

**RESALE—Cont'd**

- Extraterritorial Application of Registration Requirements, Regulation S** (this index)
- Holding Companies** (this index)
- Intrastate Offerings Under Section 3(a)(11) and Rule 147A** (this index)
- Limited Offering Exemptions, Regulation D** (this index)
- Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:123**
- Private Resales, Rule 144A** (this index)
- Real estate mortgage securities, Section 4(5), **1:123**
- Recapitalizations** (this index)
- Reorganization** (this index)
- Rescinded Rule 148** (this index)
- Rescinded Rule 237 § 3(b)** (this index)
- Rescinded Rule 240 § 3(b), **1:63**
- Rescinded Rule 242 § 3(b), **1:72**
- Restricted and Controlled Securities** (this index)
- Routine Trading Under Section 4(a)(1)** (this index)
- Section 3(b) and 3(c), **8:16, 8:37, 8:42**
- SEC v. Ralston Purina Co., **11:21**

**RESCINDED REGULATION B**

- Generally, **1:127 to 1:129**
- Conditions of exemption, **1:128**
- Suspension of exemption, **1:129**

**RESCINDED REGULATION F**

- Generally, **1:130 to 1:132**
- Conditions of exemption, **1:131**
- Suspension of exemption, **1:132**

**RESCINDED RULE 144(K)**

- General rule, **1:83**
- Non-affiliate sellers, sales under Rule 144, **1:89, 1:90**
- Non-affiliate status, **1:84**
- Public and private resales by certain non-affiliates, **1:82 to 1:91**
- Restrictive legends, **1:91**
- Rule 144(d)(1) tacking, **1:87**
- Rule 144(d)(3) tacking, **1:88**
- Sales under Rule 144, **1:89, 1:90**
- Tacking, two-year holding period, **1:86 to 1:88**
- Two-year holding period, **1:85 to 1:88**

**RESCINDED RULE 148**

- Generally, **1:75 to 1:81**
- Debtor's portfolio, securities held in, Rule 148(c), **1:79**
- Definitions, **1:77**
- Issuance of securities under plan, Rule 148(b), **1:78**
- Limited availability, Rule 148(d), **1:80**
- Nonexclusive Rule, Rule 148(e), **1:81**

**RESCINDED RULE 148—Cont'd**

Preliminary note, **1:76**  
 Resales of securities issued under Bankruptcy Act, generally, **1:75 to 1:81**  
 Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:108**  
 Rule 148(a), **1:77**  
 Rule 148(b), **1:78**  
 Rule 148(c), **1:79**  
 Rule 148(d), **1:80**  
 Rule 148(e), **1:81**

**RESCINDED RULE 234 § 3(B)**

Generally, **1:39 to 1:44**  
 Certain first lien notes, **1:40**  
 Evaluation, **1:44**  
 First liens, generally, **1:39 to 1:44**  
 Securities exempted and limitations, **1:41**

**RESCINDED RULE 235 § 3(B)**

Generally, **1:45 to 1:49**  
 Administrative interpretations, **1:48**  
 Cooperative housing corporations, generally, **1:45 to 1:49**  
 Evaluation, **1:48, 1:49**  
 Issuer, limitations on, **1:47**  
 Judicial opinion, **1:49**  
 Limitations, **1:47**  
 Offering price, limitations on, **1:47**  
 Securities, limitations on, **1:47**  
 Securities of cooperative housing corporations, **1:46**  
 United Housing Foundation, Inc. v. Forman, **1:49**

**RESCINDED RULE 237 § 3(B)**

Generally, **1:50 to 1:56**  
 Amount of securities exempted, **1:54**  
 Conditions, **1:50**  
 Manner of sale, **1:53**  
 Notice, **1:55**  
 Resales of restricted securities by nonaffiliates, generally, **1:50 to 1:56**  
 Resales of securities sold under Rule 237, **1:56**

**RESCINDED RULE 240 § 3(B)**

Generally, **1:57 to 1:64**  
 Aggregate sales price, limitations on, **1:61**  
 Beneficial owners, limitation on number of, **1:62**  
 Closely held issuers, securities offerings by, generally, **1:57 to 1:64**  
 Conditions, **1:58**  
 Filing of notice of sales, **1:64**  
 Offering, manner of, **1:60**  
 Resale, limitation on, **1:63**

**RESCINDED RULE 242 § 3(B)**

Generally, **1:65 to 1:73**  
 Aggregate offering price, limitation on, **1:68**  
 Availability of exemption, **1:67**

**RESCINDED RULE 242 § 3(B)—Cont'd**

Conditions, **1:66**  
 Disclosure, **1:71**  
 Filing of notice of sales, **1:73**  
 Limitations, **1:68, 1:70, 1:72**  
 Offering, manner of, **1:69**  
 Purchasers, limitation on, **1:70**  
 Qualified corporate issuers, limited offers and sales by, generally, **1:65 to 1:73**  
 Resales, limitation on, **1:72**  
 Sales, limited, by qualified corporate issuers, generally, **1:65 to 1:73**

**RESCINDED RULE 257**

Generally, **1:74**  
 Small offerings, **1:74**

**RESCINDED RULE 505**

Generally, **1:133, 1:134**  
 Conditions of exemption, **1:134**

**RESCINSSION**

Tender of securities, **16:51, 16:111**

**RESCINSSION OFFERS**

**Seller** (this index)

**RESEARCH REPORTS**

Private resales under Rule 144A, research reports under Rules 138 and 139, **10A:47.10**

**RESIDENCE**

**Intrastate Offerings Under Section 3(a)(11) and Rule 147A** (this index)

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:89**  
 Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A, **6:8**

**RESIDENT**

Intrastate offerings under Section 3(a)(11), **4:18, 4:19**

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:52**

**RESOLUTION TRUST CORPORATION**

Real estate mortgage securities, Section 4(5), **1:99**

**RESPONSES**

Extraterritorial application of registration requirements, Regulation S, **15A:37 to 15A:40**

Reorganization with court or agency approval under Section 3(a)(10), **3:20**

**RESTITUTION**

Violations, Section 12(a)(1), **16:59**

**RESTRICTED AND CONTROLLED SECURITIES**

Affiliates and nonaffiliates. Resale, below  
 Aggregation. Resale, below  
 Amount of securities sold, limitation on, Rule 144(e). Resale, below

**RESTRICTED AND CONTROLLED SECURITIES—Cont'd**

Bankruptcy Code. Resale, below  
 Beneficiaries. Resale, below  
 Brokers  
   Resale, below  
   Special exemption, Section 4(a)(4), **10:36.10, 13:11, 13:18, 13:19, 13:31**  
 Calculation. Resale, below  
 Changes, modifications, and amendments.  
   Resale, below  
 Companion provisions. Resale, below  
 Concert, persons acting in. Resale, below  
 Contracts and agreements. Resale, below  
 Conversions. Resale, below  
 Corporations. Resale, below  
 Current public information, Rule 144(c). Resale,  
   below  
 Debt securities, resale, **10:75.50, 10:183.50**  
 Definitions. Resale, below  
 Employee benefit plans. Resale, below  
 Estate. Resale, below  
 Exchange, **10:140**  
 "Free shares," sales of, **10:36.02**  
 Full purchase price and other consideration.  
   Resale, below  
 Gifts, **10:50, 10:51, 10:154 to 10:156, 10:196, 10:197**  
 "Gypsy swaps," sales of shares acquired in,  
   **10:36.03**  
 Holding period. Resale, below  
 Installment contracts. Resale, below  
 Interest. Resale, below  
 Issuer. Resale, below  
 Legal interest. Resale, below  
 Nonexclusiveness. Resale, below  
 Nonreporting companies. Resale, below  
 Notice. Resale, below  
 Person. Resale, below  
 Pledges. Resale, below  
 Price. Resale, below  
 Private resales. Resale, below  
 Promissory notes. Resale, below  
 Public and private resales, Rule 144(k). Resale,  
   below  
 Public information, Rule 144(c). Resale, below  
 Purchase price. Resale, below  
 Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), **2:74 to 2:76**  
 Reorganization with court or agency approval  
   under Section 3(a)(10), **3:81, 3:95**  
 Reports and reporting. Resale, below  
 Resale  
   Generally, **10:1 et seq.**  
   Account, fiduciary for, **10:19**

**RESTRICTED AND CONTROLLED SECURITIES—Cont'd**

Resale—Cont'd  
 Affiliates and nonaffiliates  
   Amount of securities sold, limitation on,  
   Rule 144(e), below this group  
 Definitions, below this group  
 Estates and beneficiaries, **10:227**  
 Holding period for restricted securities, Rule  
   144(d)  
   Nonaffiliate third-party lender, need for,  
   **10:127**  
 Tacking provisions, Rule 144(d)(3)  
   Conversions, **10:142**  
   Estates, **10:162 to 10:165**  
   Third-party financing, **10:128**  
 Nonexclusiveness, Rule 144(j), **10:239 to 10:242**  
 Nonrestricted securities, sales by, **10:28**  
 Public and private resales, Rule 144(k),  
   **10:249**  
 Selling under Rule 144(k), **10:228**  
 Status, Public and private resales, Rule  
   144(k), **10:244**  
 Aggregation, determination of amount, Rule  
   144(e)(3). Amount of securities sold,  
   limitation on, Rule 144(e), below this  
   group  
 Amendments. Changes, modifications, and  
   amendments, below this group  
 Amount of securities sold, limitation on, Rule  
   144(e)  
 Generally, **10:168 to 10:214**  
 Affiliates and nonaffiliates  
   Aggregation, determination of amount,  
   Rule 144(e)(3), **10:202 to 10:205**  
   Calculation of volume limitation for  
   affiliates and nonaffiliates, below this  
   group  
   Sales, **10:172, 10:173**  
 Aggregation, determination of amount, Rule  
   144(e)(3)  
 Generally, **10:188 to 10:214**  
 Attribution under Rule 144(a)(2)  
   distinguished, **10:189 to 10:192**  
 Beneficial owners who tack, **10:193**  
 Companion provisions to tacking subsec-  
   tions  
   Generally, **10:195 to 10:205**  
   Affiliate beneficiary as seller, **10:205**  
   Affiliate estate as seller, **10:203**  
   Estates, **10:201 to 10:205**  
   Gifts, **10:196, 10:197**  
   Interpretative positions common to  
   Rule 144(e)(3)(ii), (iii), and (iv),  
   **10:199**

## RESTRICTED AND CONTROLLED SECURITIES—Cont'd

Resale—Cont'd  
 Amount of securities sold, limitation on, Rule 144(e)—Cont'd  
 Aggregation, determination of amount, Rule 144(e)(3)—Cont'd  
 Companion provisions to tacking subsections—Cont'd  
 Nonaffiliate beneficiary as seller, **10:204**  
 Nonaffiliate estate as seller, **10:202**  
 Pledge securities, **10:196**  
 Rule 144(e)(3)(ii), (iii), and (iv), **10:199, 10:200**  
 Trust securities, **10:196, 10:198**  
 Concert, persons acting in  
 Generally, **10:206 to 10:212**  
 Business relationships, **10:210**  
 Family relationships, **10:211**  
 Formal agreements, **10:207**  
 Multiple accounts, common fiduciary, **10:209**  
 Presumption, agreements by, **10:208 to 10:211**  
 Rule 144(e)(3)(iv), **10:212**  
 Convertible securities and underlying securities, sales involving, **10:194**  
 Corporations and organizations, **10:190, 10:191**  
 Defined, **10:188**  
 Estates, **10:191**  
 Relatives, **10:190**  
 Rule 144(a)(2) and 144(e)(3) distinguished, **10:192**  
 Tacking subsections. Companion provisions to tacking subsections, above this subgroup  
 Trusts and estates, **10:191**  
 Underlying securities and convertible securities, sales involving, **10:194**  
 Volume limitation, sales excluded from  
 Prior Rule 144(k), **10:214**  
 Rule 144(e)(3)(vii), **10:213**  
 Calculation of volume limitation for affiliates and nonaffiliates  
 Generally, **10:174 to 10:186**  
 Affiliates, transactions by, **10:186**  
 Call options, **10:185**  
 Class of securities, **10:176**  
 1972-1978 volume standards, **10:178**  
 1978 amendments, **10:179**  
 One percent test, Rule 144(e)(1)(i), **10:181**  
 Present policy, **10:180 to 10:183**  
 Relevant sales, **10:175, 10:176**

## RESTRICTED AND CONTROLLED SECURITIES—Cont'd

Resale—Cont'd  
 Amount of securities sold, limitation on, Rule 144(e)—Cont'd  
 Calculation of volume limitation for affiliates and nonaffiliates—Cont'd  
 Seller, nature of, **10:175**  
 Special situation, **10:185, 10:186**  
 Successive periods, sales in, **10:184**  
 Three-month measuring period, **10:177**  
 Trading volume test for debt securities, Rule (e)(2), **10:183.50**  
 Trading volume test for listed and unlisted securities, Rule 144(e)(1)(ii), **10:182**  
 Trading volume test for listed and unlisted securities, Rule 144(e)(1)(iii), **10:183**  
 Volume standards, generally, **10:178 to 10:183**  
 Companion provisions to tacking subsections. Aggregation, determination of amount, Rule 144(e)(3), above this group  
 Concert, persons acting in. Aggregation, determination of amount, Rule 144(e)(3), above this group  
 Nonaffiliates, sales by, **10:173**  
 Tacking subsections. Aggregation, determination of amount, Rule 144(e)(3), above this group  
 Volume limitation. Calculation of volume limitation for affiliates and nonaffiliates, above this group  
 Wheat report evaluation of Rule 154, **10:169**  
 Arbitration, securities received pursuant to, **10:112**  
 As recipient, **10:54, 10:57**  
 Assumptions of obligations, **10:130**  
 Attribution under Rule 144(a)(2) distinguished, **10:189 to 10:192**  
 Availability to public, **10:92**  
 Bad faith, sales by persons acting in, **10:27**  
 Bankruptcy Code, sales of securities acquired under  
 Generally, **10:36.04 to 10:36.10**  
 Section 1145, exemptions under  
 Generally, **10:36.08**  
 Stockbroker exemptions under Code, **10:36.10**  
 Transferred securities under 1145(a)(1) or 1145(a)(2), **10:36.08**  
 Transferred securities under 1145(a)(3), **10:36.09**  
 Section 1145(b)(1)(D), **10:36.07**  
 Sections 1145(b)(1)(A), (B) and (C), **10:36.06**

## RESTRICTED AND CONTROLLED SECURITIES—Cont'd

Resale—Cont'd  
 Bankruptcy Code, sales of securities acquired under—Cont'd  
 Stockbroker exemptions under Code, **10:36.10**  
 Transferred securities  
 Section 1145(a)(3), **10:36.09**  
 Sections 1145(a)(1) or 1145(a)(2), **10:36.08**  
 Underwriter defined, **10:36.05**  
 Beneficial interests, **10:46, 10:99**  
 Beneficial owners who tack, **10:193**  
 Beneficiaries  
 Amount of securities sold, limitation on, Rule 144(e), **10:204, 10:205**  
 Definitions, Rule 144(a), **10:55, 10:58**  
 Holding period for restricted securities, Rule 144(d), **10:160, 10:164, 10:165**  
 Nonaffiliate estates and beneficiaries, **10:227**  
 Block positioner, **10:221**  
 Bona fide intention to sell, Rule 144(i), **10:237, 10:237.50**  
 Bona fide pledge by nonissuer, **10:146, 10:147**  
 Box, short sales against, **10:25, 10:26**  
 Broker-dealers, sales by, **10:16**  
 Brokers  
 Bankruptcy Code, stockbroker exemptions, **10:36.10**  
 Duties, **10:13.10 to 10:13.30**  
 Manner of sale under Rule 144(f), **10:217, 10:218, 10:225**  
 Transactions under Rule 144(g), **10:229**  
 Business relationships, **10:210**  
 Calculation  
 Amount of securities sold, limitation on, Rule 144(e), above  
 Notice of proposed sale, Rule 144(h), **10:232**  
 Call options, **10:30, 10:185, 10:224**  
 Cancellation of indebtedness as consideration, **10:120**  
 Cashless exercise of options and warrants, **10:167.50**  
 Certain relatives, **10:44**  
 Changes, modifications, and amendments  
 Amount of securities sold, limitation on, Rule 144(e), **10:179**  
 Definitions, Rule 144(a), **10:70, 10:71, 10:75**  
 Notice of proposed sale, Rule 144(h), **10:235**  
 Checklist, **10:9**

## RESTRICTED AND CONTROLLED SECURITIES—Cont'd

Resale—Cont'd  
 Companion provisions to tacking subsections.  
 Amount of securities sold, limitation on, Rule 144(e), above this group  
 Compensation, **10:59 to 10:61**  
 Compensation securities, **10:60**  
 Concert, persons acting in. Amount of securities sold, limitation on, Rule 144(e), above this group  
 Conditions to be met, Rule 144(b), **10:76**  
 Contingent stock, **10:144**  
 Contracts and agreements  
 Amount of securities sold, limitation on, Rule 144(e)  
 Formal agreement, **10:207**  
 Presumption, agreements by, **10:208 to 10:211**  
 Holding period for restricted securities, Rule 144(d), below  
 Conversions. Holding period for restricted securities, Rule 144(d), below this group  
 Convertible securities, **10:141, 10:194**  
 Corporations  
 Amount of securities sold, limitation on, Rule 144(e), **10:190, 10:191**  
 Definitions, Rule 144(a), **10:48**  
 Holding period for restricted securities, Rule 144(d)  
 Date of acquisition, **10:107 to 10:109**  
 Purchases, acquisitions not involving, **10:103**  
 Covenants, restrictive covenants, **10:118**  
 Current public information, Rule 144(c)  
 Generally, **10:77 to 10:94**  
 Nonreporting companies  
 Generally, **10:87 to 10:94**  
 "Current" information, **10:91**  
 Eligible issuers, **10:88**  
 Insurance companies, **10:94**  
 "Publicly available" information, **10:92**  
 Required information, **10:90**  
 Seller, problems for, **10:93**  
 Waiting period, **10:89**  
 Reporting companies  
 Generally, **10:78 to 10:86**  
 Deficient filings, **10:85**  
 Delinquent issuer, **10:84**  
 Eligible issuers, **10:79, 10:80**  
 Ninety-day waiting period, **10:81, 10:82**  
 Parent-subsidiary transactions, ninety-day waiting period, **10:82**  
 Reliance by seller, **10:86**  
 Required information, **10:83 to 10:85**

## RESTRICTED AND CONTROLLED SECURITIES—Cont'd

Resale—Cont'd  
 Current public information, Rule 144(c)  
 —Cont'd  
 Reporting companies—Cont'd  
 Sections 12 and 15(d) of Exchange Act, **10:79**  
 Voluntary compliance by previously eligible issuer, **10:80**  
 Current SEC staff view, **10:126**  
 Date of acquisition. Holding period for restricted securities, Rule 144(d), below this group  
 Dealer, **10:220**  
 Debtor, pledgor as, **10:149**  
 Debts, cancellation of indebtedness as consideration, **10:120**  
 Debt securities, **10:75.50, 10:183.50**  
 Deficient filings, **10:85**  
 Definitions  
 Generally, **10:37 to 10:75.50**  
 Affiliate, Rule 144(a)(1)  
 Generally, **10:37 to 10:42.10**  
 Directors, officers, and key shareholders, **10:39**  
 Employee benefit plans, **10:41**  
 Factors relevant to determination of controlling person, **10:41.50**  
 Issuer, persons controlled by, **10:42**  
 Relatives of affiliates, **10:40**  
 Significance of status, **10:37**  
 Staff policy towards definition, **10:38**  
 Trusts and estates, **10:41**  
 Affiliates and nonaffiliates  
 Restricted securities, Rule 144(a)(3), **10:51**  
 Rule 144(a)(1). Affiliate, Rule 144(a)(1), above this subgroup  
 Aggregation, **10:188**  
 Employee benefit plans  
 Affiliate, Rule 144(a)(1), **10:41**  
 Restricted securities, Rule 144(a)(3), below this group  
 Person, Rule 144(a)(2)  
 Generally, **10:43 to 10:48**  
 Certain relatives, **10:44**  
 Corporations and organizations, **10:48**  
 Estates, **10:45 to 10:47**  
 Ten percent owners of beneficial interests, **10:46**  
 Trustee, executor, or other capacity, **10:47**  
 Trusts and estates, **10:45 to 10:47**  
 Restricted securities, Rule 144(a)(3)  
 Generally, **10:49 to 10:75.50**

## RESTRICTED AND CONTROLLED SECURITIES—Cont'd

Resale—Cont'd  
 Definitions—Cont'd  
 Restricted securities, Rule 144(a)(3)  
 —Cont'd  
 Affiliates and nonaffiliates as donor of gift, **10:51**  
 Beneficiary as recipient, **10:55, 10:58**  
 Compensation securities, **10:60**  
 Debt securities, **10:75.50**  
 Dissolutions, **10:74**  
 Employee benefit plans  
 Generally, **10:65 to 10:69**  
 Description, **10:68**  
 Distributees, resales by, **10:67**  
 Three part exceptions, **10:69**  
 Estates, **10:56 to 10:58**  
 Foreign issuers, **10:73**  
 Foreign offerings, **10:62**  
 Gifts, **10:50, 10:51**  
 Innocent purchasers in nonexempted transactions, **10:64**  
 Issuer as donor of gifts, **10:50**  
 Mergers effecting change of domicile, **10:75**  
 Par value, changes in, **10:70, 10:71**  
 Pledge arrangements, **10:52**  
 As recipient, **10:54, 10:57**  
 Section 3(a)(9), securities acquired in transactions under, **10:63**  
 Section 3(a)(10), securities acquired in transactions under, **10:63**  
 Section 3(a)(11), securities acquired in transactions under, **10:63**  
 Special holding period, **10:61**  
 Spin-offs, **10:70, 10:72, 10:73**  
 Stock dividends, **10:70**  
 Stock splits, **10:70**  
 Trusts, **10:53 to 10:55**  
 Underwriter or finder compensation, **10:59 to 10:61**  
 Rule 144(a)(1). Affiliate, Rule 144(a)(1), above this subgroup  
 Rule 144(a)(2). Person, Rule 144(a)(2), above this subgroup  
 Rule 144(a)(3). Restricted securities, Rule 144(a)(3), above this subgroup  
 Rule 144(a) definitions, generally, **10:37 to 10:75.50**  
 Delays, ordinary delays in delivery of securities, **10:111**  
 Delinquent issuer, **10:84**  
 Delivery, ordinary delays in delivery of securities, **10:111**  
 Description, **10:68**

**RESTRICTED AND CONTROLLED SECURITIES—Cont'd**

Resale—Cont'd  
 Directors, officers, and key shareholders, **10:39**  
 Discharge, full discharge prior to sale, **10:124**  
 Dissolutions, **10:74**  
 Distributees, resales by, **10:67**  
 Dividends, **10:70**  
 Domicile, **10:75**  
 Donor, **10:50, 10:51**  
 Election theory, **10:241**  
 Eligible issuers, **10:79, 10:80, 10:88**  
 Employee benefit plans  
   Definitions, above this group  
   Trustee of employee benefit plan, sales by, **10:32**  
 Escrow, securities held in, **10:113**  
 Estate  
   Amount of securities sold, limitation on, Rule 144(e), **10:191, 10:201 to 10:205**  
   Definitions, Rule 144(a), **10:41, 10:45 to 10:47, 10:56 to 10:58**  
   Fiduciary for trust, account, or estate, **10:19**  
   Holding period for restricted securities, Rule 144(d), below  
   Nonaffiliate estates and beneficiaries, **10:227**  
 Evaluation, **10:169**  
 Exchange, **10:140**  
 Exchange, offshore, **10:35**  
 Exchange Act, **10:79**  
 Exchanges, National securities exchanges, **10:30**  
 Executor, **10:47**  
 External reorganizations, **10:135**  
**Family and Relatives** (this index)  
 Fiduciary, **10:18, 10:19, 10:209**  
 Finder, **10:59 to 10:61**  
 Foreign issuers, **10:73**  
 Foreign offerings, **10:62**  
 Form 144, **10:233**  
 Formal agreements, **10:207**  
 "Free shares," sales of, **10:36.02**  
 Full collateralization, **10:123**  
 Full discharge prior to sale, **10:124**  
 Full purchase price and other consideration.  
   Holding period, below this group  
 Full recourse, **10:122, 10:148 to 10:150**  
 Gifts, **10:50, 10:51, 10:154 to 10:156, 10:196, 10:197**  
 Guarantee, **10:119, 10:130**  
 Gypsy swaps, sales of shares acquired in, **10:36.03**  
 Holders of Rule 133 securities, sales by, **10:31**  
 Holding companies, **10:167**

**RESTRICTED AND CONTROLLED SECURITIES—Cont'd**

Resale—Cont'd  
 Holding period  
   Generally, **10:95 to 10:167.50**  
 Acquisitions involving purchases  
   Generally, **10:105 to 10:120**  
   Date of acquisition, below this subgroup  
   Full purchase price and other consideration, below this subgroup  
 Acquisitions not involving purchases  
   Generally, **10:99 to 10:104**  
 Corporations, **10:103**  
 Individuals, **10:101**  
 Partnerships, **10:102**  
   Transfers of both legal and beneficial interests, **10:99**  
   Transfers of legal interest only, **10:100 to 10:104**  
 Trusts, **10:104**  
 Date of acquisition  
   Generally, **10:106 to 10:115**  
   Arbitration, securities received pursuant to, **10:112**  
   Corporation as transferor, **10:108**  
   Escrow, securities held in, **10:113**  
   General Rule, Rule 144(d)(1), below this group  
   Individual as transferor, **10:107**  
   Limited partnership or limited liability company as transferor, **10:109**  
   Ordinary delays in delivery of securities, **10:111**  
   Pledgee from pledgor-issuer, securities received by, **10:115**  
   Section 3(a)(10), securities received in, **10:114**  
   Settlement of litigation, securities received in, **10:112**  
   Transfers to corporations, **10:107 to 10:109**  
   Transfers to trusts, **10:110**  
 Definitions, Rule 144(a), **10:61**  
 Full purchase price and other consideration  
   Generally, **10:116 to 10:120**  
   Cancellation of indebtedness as consideration, **10:120**  
   Guarantee as consideration, **10:119**  
   Restrictive covenants, **10:118**  
   Rule 144(d), below this subgroup  
   Service as consideration, **10:117**  
 Public and private resales, Rule 144(k), **10:245 to 10:248**  
 Purchase price. Full purchase price and other consideration, above this subgroup

**RESTRICTED AND CONTROLLED SECURITIES—Cont'd**

Resale—Cont'd

- Holding period—Cont'd
- Rule 144(d)
  - Generally, **10:95 to 10:167.50**
  - Conversions, tacking provisions, Rule 144(d)(3)
    - Generally, **10:136 to 10:143**
    - Affiliate, transactions with, **10:142**
    - Convertible security, **10:141**
    - Exchange, **10:140**
    - Identity of issuer, **10:139**
    - Rule 144(d)(3)(i), **10:143**
  - Estates, tacking provisions, Rule 144(d)(3)
    - Generally, **10:161 to 10:167**
    - Affiliate beneficiary, **10:165**
    - Affiliate estate, **10:163**
    - Beneficiary as transferee, **10:164, 10:165**
    - Nonaffiliate beneficiary, **10:164**
    - Nonaffiliate estate, **10:162**
    - Transferee, estate as, **10:162, 10:163**
    - Transferee, estate beneficiary as, **10:164, 10:165**
  - Pledges, tacking provisions, Rule 144(d)(3)
    - Generally, **10:145 to 10:153**
    - Bona fide pledge by nonissuer, **10:146, 10:147**
      - Debtor, pledgor as debtor, **10:149**
      - Full recourse, **10:148 to 10:150**
      - Obligations secured by pledges, **10:151**
      - Pledged securities, **10:147**
      - Pledger as debtor, **10:149**
      - Pledger not debtor, **10:150**
      - Pledgor's holding period, **10:152**
      - Purchasers who buy from pledgee, **10:153**
    - Promissory notes, other obligations, or installment contracts, Rule 144(d)(2)
      - Generally, **10:121 to 10:130**
      - Full collateralization, **10:123**
      - Full discharge prior to sale, **10:124**
      - Full recourse, **10:122**
      - Third-party financing, below this group
    - Rule 144(d)(3). Tacking provisions, Rule 144(d)(3), below this subgroup
    - Tacking provisions, Rule 144(d)(3)
      - Generally, **10:131 to 10:167.50**
      - Beneficiary as transferee, **10:160**
      - Cashless exercise of options and warrants, **10:167.50**
      - Contingent stock, **10:144**
      - Conversions, above this subgroup

**RESTRICTED AND CONTROLLED SECURITIES—Cont'd**

Resale—Cont'd

- Holding period—Cont'd
- Rule 144(d)—Cont'd
  - Tacking provisions, Rule 144(d)(3)
    - Cont'd
    - Estates, above this subgroup
    - External reorganizations, **10:135**
    - Gifts, **10:154 to 10:156**
    - Holding companies, formation of, **10:167**
    - Internal reorganizations, **10:134**
    - Pledges, above this subgroup
    - Preliminary considerations, **10:155**
    - Recapitalizations, **10:132, 10:134, 10:135**
    - Rule 145(a) transactions, **10:166, 10:167**
      - Stock dividends, **10:132, 10:133**
      - Stock splits, **10:132, 10:133**
      - Transferee, trust as, **10:159**
      - Trusts, **10:157 to 10:160**
    - Third-party financing
      - Generally, **10:125 to 10:130**
      - Assumptions of obligations, **10:130**
      - Current SEC staff view, **10:126**
      - Guarantees and assumptions of obligations, **10:130**
      - Nonaffiliate, **10:128**
      - Nonaffiliate third-party lender, need for, **10:127**
      - Third party, **10:129**
    - Tracing requirement, **10:98**
  - Holding period for restricted securities, Rule 144(d)
    - Affiliates and nonaffiliates, above this group
    - Identity of issuer, **10:139**
    - Individuals, **10:101, 10:107**
    - Innocent purchasers in nonexempted transactions, **10:64**
    - Installment contracts, Rule 144(d)(2). Holding period, Rule 144(d), above
    - Insurance companies, **10:94**
    - Integration concept, relevance of, **10:42.10**
    - Intent, **10:237, 10:237.50**
    - Interest
      - Definitions, Rule 144(a), **10:46**
      - Legal interest
        - Transfers of both legal and beneficial interests, **10:99**
        - Transfers of legal interest only, **10:100 to 10:104**
    - Internal reorganizations, **10:134**
    - Internal Revenue Service, **10:36**

**RESTRICTED AND CONTROLLED SECURITIES—Cont'd**

- Resale—Cont'd
  - Interpretative positions common to Rule 144(e)(3)(ii), (iii), and (iv), **10:199**
- Issuer
  - Current public information, Rule 144(c), **10:79, 10:80, 10:84, 10:88**
  - Definitions, Rule 144(a), **10:42, 10:50, 10:73**
  - Duties, **10:10 to 10:13**
  - Holding period for restricted securities, Rule 144(d), **10:115, 10:139**
  - Registration process, sales by persons while issuer is in, **10:21 to 10:24**
- Legal interest
  - Transfers of both legal and beneficial interests, **10:99**
  - Transfers of legal interest only, **10:100 to 10:104**
- Legends, restrictive, **10:251**
- Lender, **10:127**
- Liability, limited partnership or limited liability company as transferor, **10:109**
- Limitations and restrictions, **10:36, 10:226 to 10:228**
- Limited partnership or limited liability company as transferor, **10:109**
- Listed and unlisted securities, **10:182, 10:183**
- Listed options, sales through exercise of, **10:33**
- Market-maker, **10:219 to 10:222**
- Mergers effecting change of domicile, **10:75**
- Multiple accounts, common fiduciary, **10:209**
- National securities exchanges, **10:30**
- 1978 amendments, **10:179**
- 1972-1978 volume standards, **10:178**
- Ninety-day waiting period, **10:81, 10:82**
- Nonexclusiveness
  - Generally, **10:15**
  - Affiliates, sales by, **10:242**
  - Election theory, **10:241**
  - Nonaffiliates, **10:239 to 10:241**
  - Post 2007 amendments, SEC views, **10:238**
  - Pre 2007 amendments, SEC views, **10:238.50**
  - Rule 144(j), **10:238 to 10:242**
- Nonreporting companies, Current public information, Rule 144(c), above this group
- No remuneration except to broker, **10:225**
- Notice of proposed sale, Rule 144(h)
  - Generally, **10:230 to 10:236**
  - Amendments, **10:235**
  - Calculation, **10:232**
  - Exemptions, **10:236**
  - Filing, time and place, **10:234**
  - Form 144, **10:233**
- Resale—Cont'd
  - Notice of proposed sale, Rule 144(h)—Cont'd
    - General Rule, **10:231**
    - Small transactions exclusion, **10:231**
  - Offerings, **10:62**
  - Offshore exchange, sales of securities on, **10:35**
  - One percent test, Rule 144(e)(1)(i), **10:181**
  - Options, call, **10:30, 10:33, 10:185, 10:224**
  - Ordinary delays in delivery of securities, **10:111**
  - Ownership, **10:46, 10:193**
  - Parent-subsidiary transactions, **10:17 to 10:20, 10:82**
  - Partnership, **10:102, 10:109**
  - Par value, changes in, **10:70, 10:71**
  - Permissible methods of resale, generally, **10:216 to 10:222**
  - Person, Rule 144(a)(2). Definitions, above this group
  - Pledges
    - Definitions, Rule 144(a), **10:52**
    - Holding period for restricted securities, Rule 144(d), above
    - Subsidiary as pledgee, **10:20**
  - Pledge securities, **10:196**
  - Post-effective period, **10:24**
  - Pre 2007 amendments, **10:237.50, 10:238.50**
  - Prefiling period, **10:22**
  - Preliminary considerations, **10:155**
  - Presumptions, **10:29, 10:208 to 10:211**
  - Price. Holding period, above this group
  - Private resales. Public and private resales, Rule 144(k), below this group
  - Promissory notes, other obligations, or installment contracts, Rule 144(d)(2). Holding period, above this group
  - Proposed Rule 144, **10:6**
  - Public and private resales, Rule 144(k)
    - Generally, **10:243 to 10:251**
    - General Rule, **10:243, 10:245**
    - Legends, restrictive, **10:251**
    - No aggregation, **10:246**
    - Nonaffiliate sellers, **10:249**
    - Nonaffiliate status, **10:244**
    - Rule 10b-6, **10:251**
    - Rule 144(d)(1), tacking under, **10:247**
    - Rule 144(d)(3), **10:248**
    - Rule 144(e), **10:249, 10:250**
    - Tacking, **10:246 to 10:248**
    - Third persons, **10:250**
    - Two-year holding period, **10:245 to 10:248**
  - Public information. Current public information, Rule 144(c), above

**RESTRICTED AND CONTROLLED SECURITIES—Cont'd**

Resale—Cont'd

- “Publicly available” information, **10:92**
- Purchase price. Holding period, above this group
- Purchaser, **10:64, 10:153**
- Recapitalizations, **10:132, 10:134, 10:135**
- Recipient, **10:54, 10:55, 10:57, 10:58**
- Records and recording, **10:22, 10:85, 10:234**
- Registration, **10:21 to 10:24, 10:34**
- Relatives. **Family and Relatives** (this index)
- Relevant sales, **10:175, 10:176**
- Reliance by seller, **10:86**
- Remuneration, **10:225**
- Reports and reporting
  - Current public information, Rule 144(c), above this group
  - Wheat report, **10:4, 10:169**
- Restrictive covenants, **10:118**
- Revised proposed Rule 144 in 1970, **10:7**
- Riskless sales on principal basis, **10:218**
- Rule 10b-6, **10:251**
- Rule 133, **10:31**
- Rule 144, generally, **10:1 et seq.**
- Rule 144(a). Definitions, above this group
- Rule 144(a)(1). Definitions, above this group
- Rule 144(a)(2)
  - Amount of securities sold, limitation on, Rule 144(e), **10:189 to 10:192**
  - Definitions, above this group
- Rule 144(a)(2) and 144(e)(3) distinguished, **10:192**
- Rule 144(a)(3)
  - Amount of securities sold, limitation on, Rule 144(e), **10:192**
  - Definitions, above this group
- Rule 144(b), **10:76**
- Rule 144(c). Current public information, Rule 144(c), above this group
- Rule 144(d). Holding period for restricted securities, Rule 144(d), above this group
- Rule 144(d)(1), tacking under, **10:247**
- Rule 144(d)(2). Holding period for restricted securities, Rule 144(d), above this group
- Rule 144(d)(3), **10:248**
- Rule 144(d)(3). Holding period for restricted securities, Rule 144(d), above this group
- Rule 144(d)(3)(i), **10:143**
- Rule 144(e)
  - Amount of securities sold, limitation on, Rule 144(e), above this group
  - Public and private resales, **10:249, 10:250**
- Rule 144(e)(3). Amount of securities sold, limitation on, Rule 144(e), above this group

**RESTRICTED AND CONTROLLED SECURITIES—Cont'd**

Resale—Cont'd

- Rule 144(e)(3)(ii), (iii), and (iv), **10:199, 10:200**
- Rule 144(e)(3)(iv), **10:212**
- Rule 144(f), manner of sale, generally, **10:215 to 10:228**
- Rule 144(g), **10:229**
- Rule 144(h). Notice of proposed sale, Rule 144(h), above this group
- Rule 144(i), **10:237, 10:237.50**
- Rule 144(j). Nonexclusiveness, Rule 144(j), above this group
- Rule 144(k)
  - Nonaffiliates, **10:228**
  - Public and private resales, Rule 144(k), above this group
- Rule 145(a) transactions, **10:166, 10:167**
- Rule 154, **10:3, 10:169**
- Rule 701 transactions, resale of restricted securities acquired in, **10:36.01 to 10:36.03**
- Sale, manner of, generally, **10:215 to 10:228**
- SEC rules, special, **10:13.30**
- SEC's proposed 160 series, **10:5**
- SEC staff view, **10:126**
- Section 3(a)(9), **2:74 to 2:76, 10:63**
- Section 3(a)(10), **10:63, 10:114**
- Section 3(a)(11), **10:63**
- Section 1145, exemptions under. Bankruptcy Code, sales of securities acquired under, above this group
- Sections 4(a)(1) and 4(a)(4), **10:14**
- Sections 12 and 15(d) of Exchange Act, **10:79**
- Seller
  - Amount of securities sold, limitation on, Rule 144(e), **10:175, 10:202 to 10:205**
  - Current public information, Rule 144(c), **10:86**
  - Public and private resales, Rule 144(k), **10:249**
- Service as consideration, **10:117**
- Settlement of litigation, securities received in, **10:112**
- Short sales, **10:13.30**
- Short sales against box, **10:25, 10:26**
- Short swing profit rule, **10:234.10**
- Small transactions exclusion, **10:231**
- Solicitation prohibited, **10:223, 10:224**
- Special holding period, **10:61**
- Specialist acting as dealer, **10:220**
- Special SEC rules, **10:13.30**
- Special situations, generally, **10:16 to 10:36.10**
- Spin-offs, **10:70, 10:72, 10:73**
- Staff policy towards definition, **10:38**
- Stock, contingent, **10:144**

## RESTRICTED AND CONTROLLED SECURITIES—Cont'd

Resale—Cont'd  
 Stockbroker exemptions under Bankruptcy Code, sales of securities acquired under Code, **10:36.10**  
 Stock dividends, **10:70, 10:132, 10:133**  
 Stockholders, **10:39**  
 Stock splits, **10:70, 10:132, 10:133**  
 Successive periods, sales in, **10:184**  
 Tacking  
   Amount of securities sold, limitation on, Rule 144(e), above this group  
   Holding period, above this group  
   Public and private resales, Rule 144(k), **10:246 to 10:248**  
 Ten percent owners of beneficial interests, **10:46**  
 Third party  
   Holding period, above  
   Promissory notes, other obligations, or installment contracts, **10:129**  
 Third persons, **10:250**  
 Three-month measuring period, **10:177**  
 Three part exceptions, **10:69**  
 Time  
   Amount of securities sold, limitation on, Rule 144(e), **10:177, 10:184**  
   Current public information, Rule 144(c), **10:81, 10:82, 10:89**  
   Definitions, Rule 144(a), **10:61**  
   Notice of proposed sale, Rule 144(h), **10:234**  
   Post-effective period, **10:24**  
   Prefiling period, **10:22**  
   Public and private resales, Rule 144(k), **10:245 to 10:248**  
   Waiting period, **10:23**  
 Tracing requirement, **10:98**  
 Trading volume test for listed and unlisted securities, **10:182, 10:183**  
 Transfers  
   Bankruptcy Code, sales of securities acquired under, **10:36.08, 10:36.09**  
   Holding period for restricted securities, Rule 144(d)  
   Acquisitions not involving purchases, **10:99 to 10:104**  
   Date of acquisition, **10:107 to 10:110**  
   Tacking provisions, Rule 144(d)(3), **10:159, 10:160, 10:162 to 10:165**  
 Trusts and trustees  
   Generally, **10:32**  
   Amount of securities sold, limitation on, Rule 144(e), **10:191, 10:196, 10:198**

## RESTRICTED AND CONTROLLED SECURITIES—Cont'd

Resale—Cont'd  
 Trusts and trustees—Cont'd  
 Definitions, Rule 144(a), **10:41, 10:45 to 10:47, 10:53 to 10:55**  
 Employee benefit plans, **10:32**  
 Fiduciary for trust, account, or estate, **10:19**  
 Holding period for restricted securities, Rule 144(d), **10:104, 10:110, 10:157 to 10:160**  
 2007 amendments  
 Nonexclusiveness  
   Post 2007 amendments, **10:238**  
   Pre 2007 amendments, **10:238.50**  
 Rule 144(i), pre 2007 amendments, **10:237.50**  
 Rule 144(j), **10:238**  
 Two-year holding period, **10:245 to 10:248**  
 Underlying securities and convertible securities, sales involving, **10:194**  
 Underwriter, **10:29, 10:36.05, 10:59 to 10:61**  
 Value, par, **10:70, 10:71**  
 Volume limitation for affiliates and nonaffiliates. Amount of securities sold, limitation on, Rule 144(e), above this group  
 Voluntary compliance by previously eligible issuer, **10:80**  
 Waiting period, **10:23, 10:81, 10:82, 10:89**  
 Wheat report, **10:4, 10:169**  
 Rule 144. Resale, above  
 Rule 144(a)(1). Resale, above  
 Rule 144(a)(2). Resale, above  
 Rule 144(a)(3). Resale, above  
 Rule 144(c). Resale, above  
 Rule 144(d). Resale, above  
 Rule 144(d)(2). Resale, above  
 Rule 144(d)(3). Resale, above  
 Rule 144(e). Resale, above  
 Rule 144(e)(3). Resale, above  
 Rule 144(f). Resale, above  
 Rule 144(h). Resale, above  
 Rule 144(j). Resale, above  
 Rule 144(k). Resale, above  
 Section 3(a)(9), resale, **2:74 to 2:76, 10:63**  
 Section 1145, exemptions under. Resale, above  
 Seller. Resale, above  
 Short swing profit rule, **10:234.10**  
 Special situations. Resale, above  
 Tacking. Resale, above  
 Third party. Resale, above  
 Time. Resale, above  
 Transfers. Resale, above  
 Trusts and trustees. Resale, above  
 Volume limitation. Resale, above

**RESTRICTIONS****Limitations and Restrictions** (this index)**RESTRICTIVE COVENANTS**Resale of restricted and controlled securities,  
Rule 144, **10:118****RESTRICTIVE LEGENDS**Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D,  
**7:167**  
Rescinded Rule 144(k), **1:91****RESTRUCTURED TRANSACTIONS****Limited Offering Exemptions, Regulation D**  
(this index)**REVERSE MERGER**Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), **2:40****REVITALIZATION**Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), **2:8****RISK**Climate change risk disclosures, SEC final rules,  
**1:6**  
Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D,  
**7:298**  
Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:77**  
Private resales, Rule 144A, **10A:37**  
Resale of restricted and controlled securities,  
Rule 144, **10:218**  
SEC v. Ralston Purina Co., **11:21****RODRIGUEZ**Seller's response to violation, **16:33****ROUTINE TRADING UNDER SECTION****4(A)(1)**Generally, **9:1 et seq.**Administrative decision, **9:116**

Affiliates and nonaffiliates

Identifying potential underwriters in primary  
distribution, **9:64**Identifying potential underwriters in secondary  
distributions, below

Private resales, Section 4 (1 1/2), below

Special Rules for avoiding underwriter status,  
**9:99 to 9:102**Aircraft equipment, **9:8**An ambiguous term, **9:67**Assessment. Private resales, Section 4 (1 1/2),  
belowAssist control person, persons who, **9:75 to 9:78**Assist persons controlled by control person,  
persons who, **9:79**Assist persons under common control with issu-  
ers, persons who, **9:80**Bankers, **9:40**Bankruptcy related securities, Rule 148  
rescinded, **9:108****ROUTINE TRADING UNDER SECTION****4(A)(1)—Cont'd**Beneficial interests, **9:13**Bonus securities acquired from issuers, **9:31**Brief, SEC, **9:117**

Business combinations

Identifying potential underwriters in primary  
distribution, belowSpecial Rules for avoiding underwriter status,  
belowCall options, **9:33**Certificates, **9:4, 9:6 to 9:9**Change of circumstances, **9:25**Chinese Consolidated Benevolent Association,  
SEC versus, **9:39, 9:52**Co-issuers as underwriters, Rule 140, **9:67, 9:68**Committee certificates, **9:4**Common control, **9:80**Compensation securities, **9:84**

Construction and interpretation

Identifying potential underwriters in primary  
distribution, aboveIdentifying potential underwriters in secondary  
distributions, **9:71, 9:72**Interpretative Rules, **9:49 to 9:51**Contemporaneous sales, **9:91**Convertible securities, purchasers of, **9:32**Dealers, **9:19, 9:28, 9:29, 9:40**Definitions. Term issuer defined, Section 2(a)(4),  
belowDepositor or manager, **9:4**

Distribution

Identifying potential underwriters in primary  
distribution, belowUnderwriters, **9:18**Dividends, **9:37**Duration of underwriter status, **9:65**Electricity generating plants, **9:9**Eligibility for underwriter status, **9:62 to 9:64**Enforcement, **9:36**Equipment trust certificates, **9:6 to 9:9**Estates, **9:81**Financing, leveraged, **9:7**Finders, **9:41**First category of Section 2(a)(11). Identifying  
potential underwriters in primary distribu-  
tion, belowForeclosure sales by pledgees, **9:82**Foreign governments, Rule 143, **9:87**Fractional beneficial interests, **9:13**Fractional undivided interests in oil, gas, or other  
mineral rights, **9:10 to 9:13**Freedom from individual liability as issuer, **9:5**Fungibility, **9:26**Gas rights, fractional undivided interests in, **9:10**  
**to 9:13**

**ROUTINE TRADING UNDER SECTION****4(A)(1)—Cont'd**Gifts, **9:81**Gilligan, Will & Co. versus SEC, **9:111, 9:112, 9:115 to 9:117**Holding period, **9:24**

Identifying potential underwriters in primary distribution

Generally, **9:20 to 9:68**Affiliates, **9:64**An ambiguous term, **9:67**

Business combinations, security holders in, Rule 145(c)

Generally, **9:60 to 9:66**

Staff interpretations

Generally, **9:62 to 9:66**Affiliates of parties, **9:64**Duration of underwriter status, **9:65**Eligibility for underwriter status, **9:62 to 9:64**"Party" to Rule 145(a) transactions, **9:63**Resales outside Rule 145(d), **9:66**Co-issuers as underwriters, Rule 140, **9:67, 9:68**

First category of Section 2(a)(11). View to distribution, persons who purchase from issuers with, below this group

Interpretations. Business combinations, security holders in, Rule 145(c), above this group

Issuers, see lines throughout this index topic

Participants in distribution

Generally, **9:46 to 9:55**Judicial doctrine, **9:52, 9:53**

Section 2(a)(11)

Generally, **9:47 to 9:51**Fourth clause, **9:48**Interpretative Rules, **9:49 to 9:51**Rule 137, **9:50**Rule 142, **9:51**Third clause, **9:47**SEC versus Chinese Consolidated Benevolent Association, **9:52**"Sells for an issuer" category distinguished, **9:53**Statutory doctrine, **9:46**Presumptive underwriters, **9:56 to 9:59**

Rule 145(c). Business combinations, security holders in, Rule 145(c), above this group

Sales

Sell for issuers, persons who, below this group

Spin-offs, **9:35**

Second category of Section 2(a)(11). Sell for issuers, persons who, below this group

**ROUTINE TRADING UNDER SECTION****4(A)(1)—Cont'd**

Identifying potential underwriters in primary distribution—Cont'd

Section 2(a)(11). Participants in distribution, above this group

Security holders. Business combinations, security holders in, Rule 145(c), above this group

Sell for issuers, persons who

Generally, **9:38 to 9:45**Finders, **9:41**Investment bankers and dealers, **9:40**Officers and directors of issuers, **9:44**Proxy solicitors, **9:43**Recommend purchases of securities, persons who, **9:42**Second category of Section 2(a)(11), generally, **9:38 to 9:45**SEC versus Chinese Consolidated Benevolent Association, **9:39**

Staff interpretations. Business combinations, security holders in, Rule 145(c), above this group

View to distribution, persons who purchase from issuers with

Generally, **9:21 to 9:37**Acquisitions from issuers in stock dividends, stock splits, and recapitalizations, **9:37**Bonus securities acquired from issuers, **9:31**Change of circumstances, **9:25**Convertible securities, purchasers of, **9:32**Dealers, **9:28, 9:29**Distribution of any security, **9:27**First category of Section 2(a)(11), generally, **9:21 to 9:27**Fungibility, **9:26**Holding period, **9:24**Investment bankers, **9:28**Other purchasers, **9:28, 9:30**Parent as purchaser of subsidiary's securities, **9:34 to 9:36**Purchased from an issuer, **9:22**Sale or no sale, spin-offs, **9:35**SEC staff enforcement policy, **9:36**Spin-offs, **9:34 to 9:36**With a view to, **9:23 to 9:26**Writers of call options and purchasers of put options, **9:33**

Identifying potential underwriters in secondary distributions

Generally, **9:69**

Affiliates and nonaffiliates

Generally, **9:70 to 9:73**

Contemporaneous sales, made with

registered primary distributions, **9:91**

## ROUTINE TRADING UNDER SECTION

### 4(A)(1)—Cont'd

- Identifying potential underwriters in secondary distributions—Cont'd
- Affiliates and nonaffiliates—Cont'd
  - Judicial interpretation, **9:72**
  - Nonaffiliates, **9:92**
  - SEC interpretation, **9:71**
  - Section 2(a)(11), **9:70 to 9:73**
  - Section 4(1), generally, **9:88 to 9:92**
- Assistance control persons, persons who, **9:75 to 9:78**
- Assist persons controlled by control person, persons who, **9:79**
- Assist persons under common control with issuers, persons who, **9:80**
- Control concept, generally, **9:74 to 9:87**
- Estates, **9:81**
- Foreclosure sales by pledgees, **9:82**
- Foreign governments, Rule 143, **9:87**
- Gifts, **9:81**
  - Judicial interpretations, **9:72**
  - Limitation, inherent, **9:90**
  - Nonaffiliates, **9:92**
- Participate in secondary distribution, **9:77, 9:78**
- Persons who assist control person, **9:75 to 9:78**
- Persons who assist persons controlled by control person, **9:79**
- Persons who assist persons under common control with issuers, **9:80**
- Pledges, **9:81, 9:82**
- Presumptive underwriters, **9:83**
- Sales, **9:76, 9:82, 9:91**
- SEC interpretations, **9:71**
- Sell for control persons, **9:76**
- Transferees, **9:84 to 9:86**
- Trusts, **9:81**
- Importance of term, **9:2**
- Interests in mineral rights, **9:10 to 9:13**
- Interpretative Rules, **9:49 to 9:51**
- Investment bankers, **9:28, 9:40**
- Issuer
  - Generally, **9:2 to 9:16**
  - Identifying potential underwriters in primary distribution, above
  - Identifying potential underwriters in secondary distributions, **9:80**
- Private resales, Section 4 (1 1/2)
  - Restricted securities acquired from issuer
    - Affiliates selling, **9:123 to 9:125**
    - Nonaffiliates selling, **9:120 to 9:122**
  - Special Rules for avoiding underwriter status, **9:99 to 9:102**
  - Subsidiaries of parent's securities, sales by, **9:16**

## ROUTINE TRADING UNDER SECTION

### 4(A)(1)—Cont'd

- Issuer—Cont'd
  - Term issuer defined, Section 2(a)(4), below
  - Judicial doctrine, **9:52, 9:53**
  - Judicial interpretations, **9:72**
  - Landowners' royalty interests and working interests, **9:11**
  - Leakage provision. Special Rules for avoiding underwriter status, below
  - Lease, **9:7**
  - Leveraged lease financing, **9:7**
  - Liability, freedom from individual liability as issuer, **9:5**
  - Limitations and restrictions
    - Identifying potential underwriters in secondary distributions, **9:90**
    - Private resales, Section 4 (1 1/2), below
  - Manager defined, **9:4**
  - Mineral rights, **9:10 to 9:13**
  - No sale, **9:35**
  - Officers and directors of issuers, **9:44**
  - Oil, gas, or other mineral rights, **9:10 to 9:13**
  - Options, **9:33, 9:107**
  - Overriding royalty interests or oil or gas payments, **9:12**
  - Parent and subsidiary securities, **9:16, 9:34 to 9:36**
  - Participation in distribution
    - Identifying potential underwriters in primary distribution, above
    - Identifying potential underwriters in secondary distributions, **9:77, 9:78**
    - Section 4(a)(1) exemption, denial, **9:78**
    - "Party" to Rule 145(a) transactions, **9:63**
    - Payments, **9:12**
    - Placements, **9:96**
    - Pledges, **9:81, 9:82**
    - Presumptive underwriter doctrine, **9:56 to 9:59, 9:83, 9:106**
  - Primary distribution
    - Identifying potential underwriters in primary distribution, above
    - Identifying potential underwriters in secondary distributions, sales made contemporaneously with, **9:91**
  - Private placements under Section 4(a)(2), **9:96**
  - Private resales, Section 4 (1 1/2)
    - Generally, **9:109 to 9:129**
    - Affiliates and nonaffiliates
      - Restricted securities acquired from issuer
        - Affiliate selling, **9:123 to 9:125**
        - Nonaffiliate selling, **9:120 to 9:122**
      - Unrestricted securities
        - Affiliate selling, **9:126**
        - Nonaffiliate selling, **9:127 to 9:129**

**ROUTINE TRADING UNDER SECTION****4(A)(1)—Cont'd**

- Private resales, Section 4 (1 1/2)—Cont'd
  - After securities come to rest, **9:122, 9:125, 9:129**
- Assessment
  - Generally, **9:119 to 9:129**
  - Administrative decision, **9:116**
  - Brief, SEC, **9:117**
  - Gilligan, Will & Co. versus SEC, **9:115 to 9:117**
  - Ralston Purina versus SEC, **9:114, 9:115**
- Before securities come to rest, **9:121, 9:124, 9:128**
  - Gilligan, Will & Co. versus SEC, **9:111, 9:112, 9:115 to 9:117**
- Limitations and restrictions
  - Affiliate selling restricted securities acquired from issuer, **9:123 to 9:125**
  - Nonaffiliate selling restricted securities
    - Acquired from affiliate, **9:127 to 9:129**
    - Acquired from issuer, **9:120 to 9:122**
  - Ralston Purina versus SEC, **9:114, 9:115**
  - Section 4(a)(1) and Section 4(a)(2), relationship between, generally, **9:109 to 9:118**
  - SEC versus Ralston Purina, **9:111, 9:112**
- Proxy solicitors, **9:43**
- Purchasers, **9:28, 9:30, 9:33**
- Put options, **9:33**
- Ralston Purina v. SEC, **9:111, 9:112, 9:114, 9:115**
- Recapitalizations, **9:37**
- Recommend purchases of securities, persons who, **9:42**
- Registration, **9:91**
- Resales
  - Identifying potential underwriters in primary distribution, **9:66**
  - Private resales, Section 4 (1 1/2), above
  - Rule 144, resales of restricted and controlled securities, **10:14**
  - Special Rules for avoiding underwriter status, below
- Rescinded Rule 148, **9:108**
- Royalty interests, **9:11, 9:12**
- Rule 133(d) and transition to Rule 145(d), **9:93 to 9:95**
- Rule 137, **9:50**
- Rule 140, **9:67, 9:68**
- Rule 142, **9:51**
- Rule 143, **9:87**
- Rule 145, **9:85**
- Rule 145(c). Identifying potential underwriters in primary distribution, below
- Rule 145(d). Special Rules for avoiding underwriter status, below

**ROUTINE TRADING UNDER SECTION****4(A)(1)—Cont'd**

- Rule 145(d)(1). Special Rules for avoiding underwriter status, below
- Rule 145(d)(2), **9:103**
- Rule 145(d)(3), **9:104**
- Rule 148, **9:108**
- Sales
  - Identifying potential underwriters in primary distribution, above
  - Identifying potential underwriters in secondary distributions, **9:76, 9:82, 9:91**
  - Resales, above
    - "Sells for an issuer" category distinguished, **9:53**
  - Subsidiaries of parent's securities, sales by, **9:16**
- SEC, **9:36, 9:71, 9:111, 9:112**
- Secondary distributions. Identifying potential underwriters in secondary distributions, above
- Section 2(a)(4). Term issuer defined, Section 2(a)(4), infra
- Section 2(a)(11)
  - Identifying potential underwriters in primary distribution, above
  - Term issuer, Section (a)(4), distinguished, **9:14**
  - Transactions by underwriters, generally, **9:17**
- Section 4 (1 1/2). Private resales, Section 4 (1 1/2), above
- Section 4(a)(2)
  - Private resales, Section 4 (1 1/2), above
  - Special Rules for avoiding underwriter status, **9:96**
- Security holders. Identifying potential underwriters in primary distribution, above
- SEC versus Chinese Consolidated Benevolent Association, **9:39, 9:52**
- Sell for control persons, **9:76**
- "Sells for an issuer" category distinguished, **9:53**
- Short sales, **9:107**
- Solicitation, **9:43**
- Special Rules for avoiding underwriter status
  - Generally, **9:93 to 9:108**
  - Bankruptcy related securities, Rule 148 rescinded, **9:108**
- Business combinations. Resales of securities acquired in business combinations, below this group
- Leakage provision. Resales of securities acquired in business combinations, below this group
- Resales of securities acquired in business combinations
  - Generally, **9:93 to 9:107**
  - Acquisition between April 15, 1972 and January 1, 1973, **9:95**

**ROUTINE TRADING UNDER SECTION****4(A)(1)—Cont'd**

- Special Rules for avoiding underwriter status
  - Cont'd
  - Resales of securities acquired in business combinations—Cont'd
  - Acquisition prior to April 15, 1972, **9:94**
  - Leakage provision. Rule 145(d), below this subgroup
  - Private placements under Section 4(a)(2), **9:96**
  - Rule 133(d) and transition to Rule 145(d), **9:93 to 9:95**
  - Rule 145(d)
    - Generally, **9:97 to 9:107**
    - Affiliate of acquired company and affiliate of issuer, **9:102**
    - Affiliate of acquired company and nonaffiliate of issuer, **9:101**
    - Leakage provision, generally, **9:98 to 9:102**
    - Nonaffiliate of acquired company and affiliate of issuer, **9:100**
    - Nonaffiliate of acquired company and nonaffiliate of issuer, **9:99**
    - Options and short sales, **9:107**
    - Presumptive underwriter doctrine, **9:106**
    - Rule 145(d)(1), generally, **9:98 to 9:104**
    - Rule 145(d)(2), **9:103**
    - Rule 145(d)(3), **9:104**
    - Short sales, **9:107**
    - Unlimited resales, **9:103, 9:104**
    - Rule 145(d)(1). Rule 145(d), below this subgroup
    - Rule 145(d). Resales of securities acquired in business combinations, below this group
    - Rule 145(d)(1). Resales of securities acquired in business combinations, above this group
    - Spin-offs, **9:34 to 9:36, 9:86**
    - Staff interpretations. Identifying potential underwriters in primary distribution, above
    - Stock splits, **9:37**
    - Term as ambiguous, **9:67**
    - Term issuer defined, Section 2(a)(4)
      - Generally, **9:2 to 9:14**
      - Aircraft equipment, **9:8**
      - Certificates, trust and committees, **9:4**
      - Committee certificates, **9:4**
      - Depositor or manager, **9:4**
      - Electricity generating plants, **9:9**
      - Equipment trust certificates, **9:6**
      - Fractional beneficial interests, **9:13**
      - Fractional undivided interests in oil, gas, or other mineral rights, **9:10 to 9:13**
      - Freedom from individual liability as issuer, **9:5**

**ROUTINE TRADING UNDER SECTION****4(A)(1)—Cont'd**

- Term issuer defined, Section 2(a)(4)—Cont'd
  - General Rule, **9:3**
  - Importance of term, **9:2**
  - Landowners' royalty interests and working interests, **9:11**
  - Leveraged lease financing, **9:7**
  - Manager, **9:4**
  - Overriding royalty interests or oil or gas payments, **9:12**
  - Section 2(a)(11) issuer distinguished, **9:14**
  - Securities similar to equipment trust certificates, **9:7 to 9:9**
  - Special statutory categories, generally, **9:4 to 9:13**
    - Trust certificates, **9:4**
    - Time, **9:24, 9:94, 9:95**
    - Transfers, **9:84 to 9:86**
    - Trust certificates, **9:4, 9:6 to 9:9**
    - Trusts, **9:81**
  - Underwriter
    - Identifying potential underwriters in primary distribution, above
    - Identifying potential underwriters in secondary distributions, above
    - Special Rules for avoiding underwriter status, above
    - Transactions by, generally, **9:17, 9:18**
  - Unlimited resales, **9:103, 9:104**
  - "With a view to," **9:23 to 9:26**
  - Working interests, **9:11**
  - Writers of call options and purchasers of put options, **9:33**

**ROYALTY INTERESTS**

- Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:11, 9:12**

**RULE 10B-6**

- Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:251**

**RULE 100**

- Crowdfunding, exclusions, **15:3**

**RULE 133**

- Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:31**

**RULE 133(D)**

- Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:93 to 9:95**

**RULE 135C**

- Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:138**

**RULE 135E**

- Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:139**

**RULE 137**

Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:50**

**RULE 140**

Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:67, 9:68**

**RULE 141**

Dealers' exemption, Section 4(a)(3), **12:10**

**RULE 142**

Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:51**

**RULE 143**

Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:87**

**RULE 144**

Brokers' special exemption, Section 4(a)(4),  
**13:10**

Resale of Securities Acquired Under Section  
3(a)(9), **2:72, 2:73**

**Restricted and Controlled Securities** (this  
index)

Security futures products and standardized  
options, **5A:7**

**RULE 144A**

Dealers' exemption, Section 4(a)(3), **12:17, 12:32**  
Private resales, **10A:59**

**Private Resales, Rule 144A** (this index)

**Restricted and Controlled Securities** (this  
index)

**RULE 144(A)(1)**

**Restricted and Controlled Securities** (this  
index)

**RULE 144(A)(2)**

**Restricted and Controlled Securities** (this  
index)

**RULE 144(A)(2) AND 144(E)(3)**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities,  
Rule 144, **10:192**

**RULE 144(A)(3)**

**Restricted and Controlled Securities** (this  
index)

**RULE 144(B)**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities,  
Rule 144, **10:76**

**RULE 144(C)**

**Restricted and Controlled Securities** (this  
index)

**RULE 144(D)**

**Restricted and Controlled Securities** (this  
index)

**RULE 144(D)(1)**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities,  
Rule 144, **10:247**

**RULE 144(D)(2)**

**Restricted and Controlled Securities** (this  
index)

**RULE 144(D)(3)**

**Restricted and Controlled Securities** (this  
index)

**RULE 144(D)(3)(I)**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities,  
Rule 144, **10:143**

**RULE 144(E)**

**Restricted and Controlled Securities** (this  
index)

**RULE 144(E)(3)**

**Restricted and Controlled Securities** (this  
index)

**RULE 144(E)(3)(II), (III), AND (IV)**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities,  
Rule 144, **10:199, 10:200**

**RULE 144(E)(3)(IV)**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities,  
Rule 144, **10:212**

**RULE 144(F)**

**Restricted and Controlled Securities** (this  
index)

**RULE 144(G)**

Brokers' special exemption, Section 4(a)(4),  
**13:12 to 13:14**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities,  
Rule 144, **10:229**

**RULE 144(G)(1)**

**Brokers' Special Exemption, Section 4(a)(4)**  
(this index)

**RULE 144(G)(2)**

**Brokers' Special Exemption, Section 4(a)(4)**  
(this index)

**RULE 144(G)(2)(II)**

Brokers' special exemption, Section 4(a)(4),  
**13:36, 13:37**

**RULE 144(G)(2)(III)**

Brokers' special exemption, Section 4(a)(4),  
**13:38**

**RULE 144(G)(3)**

Brokers' special exemption, Section 4(a)(4),  
**13:39**

**RULE 144(H)**

**Restricted and Controlled Securities** (this  
index)

**RULE 144(I)**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities,  
Rule 144, **10:237, 10:237.50**

**RULE 144(J)**

**Restricted and Controlled Securities** (this  
index)

**RULE 144(K)**

**Restricted and Controlled Securities** (this  
index)

**RULE 145**

Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), **2:66 to  
2:68**

Reorganization of bank or savings association  
into holding company under Section  
3(a)(12), **5:3**

Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:85**

**RULE 145(A)**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities,  
Rule 144, **10:166, 10:167**

**RULE 145(C)**

**Routine Trading Under Section 4(a)(1)** (this  
index)

**RULE 145(D)**

**Routine Trading Under Section 4(a)(1)** (this  
index)

**RULE 145(D)(1)**

**Routine Trading Under Section 4(a)(1)** (this  
index)

**RULE 145(D)(2)**

Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:103**

**RULE 145(D)(3)**

Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:104**

**RULE 145 SECTION 5**

Reorganization of bank or savings association  
into holding company under Section  
3(a)(12), **5:3**

**RULE 146**

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:9**

**RULE 147**

**Intrastate Offerings Under Section 3(a)(11)  
and Rule 147A** (this index)

**RULE 147A**

**Intrastate Offerings Under Section 3(a)(11)  
and Rule 147A** (this index)

**RULE 147(C)(1)**

**Intrastate Offerings Under Section 3(a)(11)  
and Rule 147A** (this index)

**RULE 147(C)(2)**

**Intrastate Offerings Under Section 3(a)(11)  
and Rule 147A** (this index)

**RULE 147(D)**

**Intrastate Offerings Under Section 3(a)(11)  
and Rule 147A** (this index)

**RULE 147(E)**

**Intrastate Offerings Under Section 3(a)(11)  
and Rule 147A** (this index)

**RULE 147(G)**

Intrastate offerings under section 3(a)(11) and  
rule 147A, **4:11, 4:12**

**RULE 148**

Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:108**

**RULE 149**

Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), **2:56**

**RULE 150**

Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), **2:57**

**RULE 152**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D,  
**7:110**

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:28**

**RULE 152A**

Section 3(b) and 3(c), **8:2**

**RULE 154**

Brokers' special exemption, Section 4(a)(4), **13:9**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities,  
Rule 144, **10:3, 10:169**

**RULE 172**

Dealers' exemption, Section 4(a)(3), forty-day  
obligation, **12:20.50**

**RULE 173**

Dealers' exemption, Section 4(a)(3), forty-day  
obligation, **12:20.70**

**RULE 174**

Dealers' exemption, Section 4(a)(3), **12:20, 12:22**

Forty-day obligation, **12:20**

Ninety-day obligation, **12:22**

**RULE 236**

Section 3(b) and 3(c), **8:3**

**RULE 238**

Trading standardized options. See **Security  
Futures Products and Standardized  
Options** (this index)

**RULE 240**

**Limited Offering Exemptions, Regulation D**  
(this index)

**RULE 242**

**Limited Offering Exemptions, Regulation D**  
(this index)

**RULE 253**

**Mini-Registration Under Section 3(b), Regulation A** (this index)

**RULE 258**

**Mini-Registration Under Section 3(b), Regulation A** (this index)

**RULE 262**

Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A  
Covered persons, **6:11**

**RULE 262(A)**

Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A, **6:104**

**RULE 501(A)**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:27**

**RULE 501(A)(1)**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:56**  
Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:87**

**RULE 501(A)(2)**

**Limited Offering Exemptions, Regulation D**  
(this index)

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:88**

**RULE 501(A)(3)**

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:93**

**RULE 501(A)(4)**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:70**  
Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:94**

**RULE 501(A)(5)**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:71**  
Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:95**

**RULE 501(A)(6)**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:72**  
Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:96**

**RULE 501(A)(7)**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:73**  
Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:97**

**RULE 501(A)(8)**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:74**  
**to 7:76**

**RULE 501(B)**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:78**

**RULE 501(C)**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:79**  
**to 7:82**

**RULE 501(D)**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:83**

**RULE 501(E)**

**Limited Offering Exemptions, Regulation D**  
(this index)

**RULE 501(E)(1)**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:85**  
Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:48**

**RULE 501(E)(2)**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:86**,  
**7:87**

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:49**

**RULE 501(F)**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:90**

**RULE 501(G)**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D,  
**7:90.50 to 7:94**

**RULE 501(I)**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D,  
**7:100**

**RULE 502**

**Limited Offering Exemptions, Regulation D**  
(this index)

**RULE 502(A)**

**Limited Offering Exemptions, Regulation D**  
(this index)

**RULE 502(B)**

**Limited Offering Exemptions, Regulation D**  
(this index)

**RULE 502(C)**

**Limited Offering Exemptions, Regulation D**  
(this index)

**RULE 502(D)**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D,  
**7:166, 7:167**

**RULE 503**

**Limited Offering Exemptions, Regulation D**  
(this index)

**RULE 504**

**Limited Offering Exemptions, Regulation D**  
(this index)

**RULE 505 (FORMER)**

**Limited Offering Exemptions, Regulation D**  
(this index)

**Rescinded Rule 505** (this index)

**RULE 506**

**Limited Offering Exemptions, Regulation D**  
(this index)

**Nonpublic Offerings** (this index)

**RULE 506—Cont'd**  
Online offers, **7:279**

**RULE 507**  
**Limited Offering Exemptions, Regulation D**  
(this index)

**RULE 508**  
**Limited Offering Exemptions, Regulation D**  
(this index)  
Violations, Section 12(a)(1), **16:62**

**RULE 701**  
Restricted securities acquired in Rule 701 transaction, sales of, **10:36.01 to 10:36.03**  
**Section 3(b) and 3(c)** (this index)

**RULE 701(D)(2)(III)**  
Employee benefit plans and compensation contracts, Rule 701, **8:33**

**RULE 701(G)**  
Employee benefit plans and compensation contracts, Rule 701, **8:37**

**RULE 702**  
Employee benefit plans and compensation contracts, Rule 701, **8:20**

**RULE 703**  
Employee benefit plans and compensation contracts, Rule 701, **8:20**

**RULE 901**  
Extraterritorial application of registration requirements, Regulation S, **15A:9**

**RULE 903**  
**Extraterritorial Application of Registration Requirements, Regulation S** (this index)

**RULE 904**  
**Extraterritorial Application of Registration Requirements, Regulation S** (this index)

**RULE 905**  
Extraterritorial application of registration requirements, Regulation S, **15A:41**

**RULE 1001**  
**Section 3(b) and 3(c)** (this index)

**SAFE HARBOR**  
**Extraterritorial Application of Registration Requirements, Regulation S** (this index)

**Limited Offering Exemptions, Regulation D**  
(this index)

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:32**  
Rule 147, **4:1**  
Rule 147A, **4:1**  
Summary of types of offerings not integrated under the safe harbor and fact sheet for changes to private offering regime, **App 1C**

**SAFE HARBOR—Cont'd**  
Violations, Section 12(a)(2), statutory safe harbor, **16:108**

**SAFE HARBOUR**  
Facilitating capital formation and expanding investment opportunities, **App 1C**

**SALES**  
See also **Purchaser; Resale; Seller** (this index)  
**Aggregate Sales Price** (this index)

Coincident offers and sales, **7:48**  
Crowdfunding, restrictions on resale, **15:30**

**Extraterritorial Application of Registration Requirements, Regulation S** (this index)

Filing, **1:64, 1:73**  
Foreclosure sales, **9:82**  
Illegal sales, Section 12(a)(1), **16:36**  
Installment sales, **4:51**  
Intrastate offerings under Section 3(a)(11), **4:51, 4:64**

Investor participation, **11:185**  
**Limited Offering Exemptions, Regulation D**  
(this index)  
Listed options, sales through exercise of, **10:33**  
Nonpublic offerings, **11:185**  
Notice of sales, **1:64, 1:73, 14:7**  
Offerings to accredited investors, Section 4(a)(5), **14:7**

Real estate mortgage securities, Section 4(5), terms of sale, **1:113, 1:116, 1:122**  
Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), **2:23**  
Recommend purchases of securities, persons who, **9:42**

Registration, **7:111, 7:188 to 7:190, 9:91**  
Rescinded Rule 237 § 3(b), **1:53**  
Rescinded Rule 240 § 3(b), **1:64**  
**Rescinded Rule 242 § 3(b)** (this index)  
**Routine Trading Under Section 4(a)(1)** (this index)  
Salespeople and dealers, **4:64**

**SAME CLASS AS**  
Private resales, Rule 144A, **10A:21 to 10A:23**

**SAME ISSUER**  
Intrastate offerings under Section 3(a)(11), **4:59**

**SAMPLE LEGENDS**  
Private placement memorandum, **App 7D**

**SANCTIONS**  
Administrative sanctions  
Generally, **16:7 to 16:12**  
Constitutional challenges, SEC administrative law judge proceedings, **16:7**  
Criminal prosecution, **16:12**  
Enforcement actions, **16:11**  
FINRA enforcement proceedings, **16:7**

**SANCTIONS—Cont'd**

- Administrative sanctions—Cont'd
  - Hearings, **16:10**
  - Investigations, **16:8, 16:9**
  - SEC authority, **16:7**
  - Subpoenas, **16:9**
  - Suspension of Regulation A exemption, **6:95**
  - Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A
    - Disciplinary sanctions, **6:95**

**SAVINGS AND LOAN ASSOCIATION**

- Banks and Banking** (this index)

**SCRIP CERTIFICATES**

- Section 3(b) and 3(c), **8:1 to 8:3**

**SEC**

- Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC)** (this index)

**SECONDARY DISTRIBUTION**

- Routine Trading Under Section 4(a)(1)** (this index)

**SECONDARY OFFERINGS**

- Intrastate offerings under Section 3(a)(11), **4:8, 4:9**

**SECTION 2(A)(4)**

- Routine Trading Under Section 4(a)(1)** (this index)

**SECTION 2(A)(11)**

- Routine Trading Under Section 4(a)(1)** (this index)

**SECTION 3(A)(1)**

- Current status, **1:37**
- Former § 3(a)(1), **1:38**

**SECTION 3(A)(9)**

- Recapitalizations** (this index)
- Reorganization of bank or savings association into holding company under Section 3(a)(12), **5:3, 5:4**
- Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:63**
- Restricted and controlled securities, **2:74 to 2:76, 10:63**
- State blue sky law, compatibility with, **2:77**

**SECTION 3(A)(10)**

- Reorganization of bank or savings association into holding company under Section 3(a)(12), **5:3, 5:4**

**Reorganization** (this index)

- Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:63, 10:114**

**SECTION 3(A)(11)**

- Intrastate Offerings Under Section 3(a)(11) and Rule 147A** (this index)
- Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:63**

**SECTION 3(A)(12)**

- Banks and Banking** (this index)

**SECTION 3(A)(14)**

- Security Futures Products and Standardized Options** (this index)

**SECTIONS 3(B) AND 3(C)**

- Generally, **8:1 et seq.**
- Advisers, **8:24**
- Aggregate sales price, **8:28 to 8:30**
- Aggregates sales price tests. Employee benefit plans and compensation contracts, Rule 701, below
- Amount, limitation on
  - Employee benefit plans and compensation contracts, Rule 701, below
- Regulation CE, coordinated exemptions for issues of securities exempted under State Law, **8:15**
- Announcements, general, **8:12**
- Assessment, **8:38**
- Assets, total assets formula, **8:32**
- Business combinations, exemptions for. **Cross-Border Rights Offerings, Exchange Offers and Business Combinations** (this index)
- Calculation, time of, **8:30**
- California exemption, Rule 1001. Regulation CE, coordinated exemptions for issues of securities exempted under State Law, below
- Certificates, **8:1 to 8:3**
- Compensation contracts. Employee benefit plans and compensation contracts, Rule 701, below
- Consultants and advisers, **8:24**
- Contracts. Employee benefit plans and compensation contracts, Rule 701, below
- Coordinated exemptions. Regulation CE, coordinated exemptions for issues of securities exempted under State Law, above
- Cross-Border Rights Offerings, Exchange Offers and Business Combinations** (this index)
- Disclosure, **8:11, 8:35, 8:36**
- Eligibility requirements. Employee benefit plans and compensation contracts, Rule 701, below
- Employee benefit plans and compensation contracts, Rule 701
- Generally, **8:17 to 8:38**

**SECTIONS 3(B) AND 3(C)—Cont'd**

Employee benefit plans and compensation contracts, Rule 701—Cont'd

Aggregates sales price tests, Rules 701(d)(2)(i) and (ii). Amount, limitation on, below this group

Amount, limitation on

    Generally, **8:26 to 8:34**

Aggregates sales price tests, Rules 701(d)(2)(i) and (ii)

    Generally, **8:27 to 8:32**

Aggregate sales price, **8:28 to 8:30**

    § D1 million test, **8:31**

Time of calculation, **8:30**

Total assets formula, **8:32**

Foreign private issuers, **8:34**

Outstanding securities formula, Rule 701(d)(2)(iii), **8:33**

Assessment, **8:38**

Disclosure obligations, **8:35, 8:36**

Eligibility requirements

    Generally, **8:18 to 8:25**

    Advisers, **8:24**

    Compensatory arrangements, **8:21**

    Consultants and advisers, **8:24**

    Foreign issuers, **8:19**

    Issuer qualifications, **8:18 to 8:20**

    Participants, **8:22 to 8:25**

    Temporary Rules 702 and 703, 1988-1993, **8:20**

    Time for determining eligibility, **8:25**

    Traditional participants, **8:23**

Foreign private issuers, **8:36**

New developments, **8:17, 8:17.50**

Resale, limitations on, Rule 701(g), **8:37**

SEC compliance disclosure and interpretations, **8:17.100**

Exchange offers, exemptions for, **Cross-Border Rights Offerings, Exchange Offers and Business Combinations** (this index)

Filing of notice, **8:14**

Foreign issuers, **8:19, 8:34, 8:36**

Forms, order forms, **8:1 to 8:3**

Fractional shares, scrip certificates or order forms, Rule 236, **8:1 to 8:3**

General announcements, **8:12**

Investment, **8:39 to 8:42**

Issuer

    Employee benefit plans and compensation contracts, Rule 701, **8:18 to 8:20, 8:34, 8:36**

    Regulation CE, coordinated exemptions for issues of securities exempted under State Law, **8:8**

**Mini-Registration Under Section 3(b), Regulation A** (this index)

**SECTIONS 3(B) AND 3(C)—Cont'd**

Notice, filing of, **8:14**

§ D1 million test, **8:31**

Order forms, **8:1 to 8:3**

Outstanding securities formula, Rule 701(d)(2)(iii), **8:33**

Participants, **8:22 to 8:25**

Private issuers, **8:34, 8:36**

Purchaser, **8:9**

Purchaser representative, **8:10**

Qualifications and disqualifications, **8:18 to 8:20**

Regulation CE, coordinated exemptions for issues of securities exempted under State Law

    Generally, **8:4 to 8:16**

    California exemption, Rule 1001

    Generally, **8:5 to 8:16**

    Amount of offering, limitation on, **8:15**

    Disclosure, **8:11**

    Filing of notice, **8:14**

    General announcements, **8:12**

    Issuer, nature of, **8:8**

    Notice, filing of, **8:14**

    Purchaser, nature of, **8:9**

    Purchaser's representation, **8:10**

    Resale limitations, **8:16**

    Section 25102(n), generally, **8:7 to 8:14**

    Telephone solicitation, **8:13**

    Section 25102(n). California exemption, Rule 1001, above this group

Regulation E, **8:39 to 8:42**

Representative, purchaser's, **8:10**

Resale, **8:16, 8:37, 8:42**

Rule 152a, **8:2**

Rule 236, **8:3**

Rule 701. Employee benefit plans and compensation contracts, Rule 701, above

Rule 701(d)(2)(iii), **8:33**

Rule 701(g), **8:37**

Rule 702, **8:20**

Rule 703, **8:20**

Rule 1001. Regulation CE, coordinated exemptions for issues of securities exempted under State Law, above

Scrip certificates, **8:1 to 8:3**

Section 25102(n). Regulation CE, coordinated exemptions for issues of securities exempted under State Law, above

Securities Act of 1933, small business investment companies, securities of, Regulation E, **8:40**

Small business investment companies, securities of, Regulation E, **8:39 to 8:42**

Solicitation, telephone, **8:13**

State Law. Regulation CE, coordinated exemptions for issues of securities exempted under State Law, above

**SECTIONS 3(B) AND 3(C)—Cont'd**  
Stock, fractional shares, **8:1 to 8:3**  
Telephone solicitation, **8:13**  
Temporary Rules 702 and 703, 1988-1993, **8:20**  
Time, **8:25, 8:30**  
Total assets formula, **8:32**  
Traditional participants, **8:23**

**SECTION 4(1 1/2)**  
**Routine Trading Under Section 4(a)(1)** (this index)

**SECTION 4(2)**  
**Nonpublic Offerings** (this index)

**SECTION 4(5)**  
**Real Estate Mortgage Securities, Section 4(5)** (this index)

**SECTION 4(5)(A)**  
**Real Estate Mortgage Securities, Section 4(5)** (this index)

**SECTION 4(5)(A)(I)**  
Real estate mortgage securities, Section 4(5),  
**1:111 to 1:113**

**SECTION 4(5)(B)**  
**Real Estate Mortgage Securities, Section 4(5)** (this index)

**SECTION 4(5)(C)**  
Real estate mortgage securities, Section 4(5),  
**1:123**

**SECTION 4(A)(1)**  
**Routine Trading Under Section 4(a)(1)** (this index)

**SECTION 4(A)(2)**  
Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:96**

**SECTION 4(A)(3)(A)**  
Generally, **12:15 to 12:17**

**SECTION 4(A)(4)**  
Resale of restricted and controlled securities,  
Rule 144, **10:14**

**SECTION 4(A)(5)**  
Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:21**  
**Offerings to Accredited Investors, Section 4(a)(5)** (this index)

**SECTION 5**  
Seller's response to violations, **16:18**  
Violations, Section 12(a)(1), **16:35 to 16:38**

**SECTION 11(D)(1)**  
Private resales, Rule 144A, **10A:14**

**SECTION 12(A)(1)**  
**Violations** (this index)

**SECTION 12(A)(2)**  
**Violations** (this index)

**SECTION 12 OF EXCHANGE ACT**  
Resale of restricted and controlled securities,  
Rule 144, **10:79**

**SECTION 15(D) OF EXCHANGE ACT**  
Resale of restricted and controlled securities,  
Rule 144, **10:79**

**SECTION 17**  
Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A, **6:102**

**SECTION 54(A)**  
Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:62**

**SECTION 364**  
Reorganization with court or agency approval  
under Section 3(a)(10), **3:41**

**SECTION 364(F)**  
Reorganization with court or agency approval  
under Section 3(a)(10), **3:30, 3:31**

**SECTION 1145**  
Reorganization with court or agency approval  
under Section 3(a)(10), **3:32, 3:89, 3:90**

**SECTION 1145(A)(1)**  
Reorganization with court or agency approval  
under Section 3(a)(10), **3:89**

**SECTION 1145(A)(3)**  
Reorganization with court or agency approval  
under Section 3(a)(10), **3:90**

**SECTION 1145(B)(1)(A)**  
Reorganization with court or agency approval  
under Section 3(a)(10), **3:87**  
**Restricted and Controlled Securities** (this index)

**SECTION 1145(B)(1)(B)**  
Reorganization with court or agency approval  
under Section 3(a)(10), **3:87**  
**Restricted and Controlled Securities** (this index)

**SECTION 1145(B)(1)(C)**  
Reorganization with court or agency approval  
under Section 3(a)(10), **3:87**  
**Restricted and Controlled Securities** (this index)

**SECTION 1145(B)(1)(D)**  
Reorganization with court or agency approval  
under Section 3(a)(10), **3:88**

**SECTION 25102(N)**  
**Section 3(b) and 3(c)** (this index)

**SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION (SEC)**

Administrative law judge proceedings, constitutional challenges, **16:7**

Authority, administrative sanctions, **16:7**

Climate change risk disclosures (2024), **1:6**

Comment letters, exempted transactions, **1:2**

Cooperation, Enforcement Investigations, **16:2**

Extraterritorial application of registration requirements, Regulation S, **15A:37 to 15A:40**

Final rules, climate change risk disclosures (2024), **1:6**

Forward contracts distinguished, **5A:2**

Guidance and interpretations, recapitalization, **2:2**

Guidance on registering as a portal, **15:17**

Interpretations, recapitalization, **2:2**

Interpretive guidance, public availability of SEC, **1:2**

Issuer responses, exempted transactions, **1:2**

**Limited Offering Exemptions, Regulation D** (this index)

**Mini-Registration Under Section 3(b), Regulation A** (this index)

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:11, 11:28, 11:44**

Public availability of SEC, interpretive guidance, **1:2**

Recapitalization, guidance and interpretations, **2:2**

Regulation SBSR, **5A:14**

Reorganization with court or agency approval under Section 3(a)(10), **3:27 to 3:29**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:126**

Revisions, whistleblower program, **16:121**

Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:36, 9:71, 9:111, 9:112**

SEC EDGAR filing codes, **1:135**

SEC Form ID, **1:135**

**Security Futures Products and Standardized Options** (this index)

Transactions, security bases swaps, **5A:13**

Webpage tracking SEC rulemaking, **App 1B**

Whistleblower program, revisions, **16:121**

**SECURITIES RATING SERVICE**

Liable persons, Section 12(a)(2), **16:93**

**SECURITY BASED SWAPS**

Generally, **5A:12 to 5A:14**

Cross Border Security Swap Transactions, **5A:13**

Frequently asked questions, regulation SBSR, **5A:14**

Regulation, **5A:12**

Regulation SBSR, frequently asked questions, **5A:14**

**SECURITY BASED SWAPS—Cont'd**

SEC, **5A:13**

**SECURITY FUTURES PRODUCTS AND STANDARDIZED OPTIONS**

Generally, **5A:1 et seq.**

Affiliates, conditions and limitations of Rule 238, **5A:10**

Amendments to 1933 and 1934 Acts, **5A:3**

Amendments to Federal Securities Laws, **5A:4**

Antifraud provisions of Rule 238, **5A:10**

Calls and puts, **5A:9**

Cash forward contracts, **5A:2**

Cash-settled option, **5A:9**

CFMA, **5A:4**

Chicago Board Options Exchange

Regulatory authority prior to CFMA, **5A:3**

Standardized options trading, **5A:9**

Clarification of terms

Futures, **5A:2**

Security, **5A:2**

Security futures product, **5A:5**

Single-stock futures, **5A:2**

Clearing agencies, section 3(a)(14), **5A:11**

Commodities forward contracts, **5A:2**

Commodities futures contracts, **5A:2**

Commodity Futures Modernization Act (2002)

Amendments to 1933 and 1934 Acts, **5A:3**

In general, **5A:4**

Joint regulation of derivative securities, **5A:9**

Regulatory authority, **5A:2**

Repeal of Shad-Johnson Accord, **5A:3**

Security futures products, **5A:3**

Commodity Futures Trading Commission

Jurisdiction over single-stock futures, **5A:2**

Regulatory authority prior to CFMA, **5A:3**

Conditions of Rule 238, **5A:10**

Cross Border Security Swap Transactions, **5A:13**

Delivery of product under contract, generally, **5A:2**

Derivative securities, generally, **5A:1 et seq.**

Disclosure document, standardized options, **5A:9**

Excluded cash forward contracts, **5A:2**

Form 10 registration of standardized options, **5A:9**

Form S-1 registration of standardized options, **5A:9**

Form S-20 registration of standardized options, **5A:9**

Frequently asked questions, regulation SBSR, **5A:14**

Futures contracts distinguished, **5A:2**

Futures on narrow-based security index

Legalization under CFMA, **5A:3**

Prohibition, **5A:2**

**SECURITY FUTURES PRODUCTS AND STANDARDIZED OPTIONS—Cont'd**

Issuers, conditions and limitations of Rule 238, **5A:10**  
 Limitations of Rule 238, **5A:10**  
 National Securities Markets Improvement Act of 1996, **5A:9**  
 Nature of security futures product, Section 3(a)(14) exemption, **5A:6**  
 Nature of seller, Section 3(a)(14) exemption, **5A:6**  
 Options Clearing Corporation, **5A:9**  
 Options Disclosure Document, **5A:9**  
 Option series, **5A:9**  
 Physical delivery option, **5A:9**  
 Registration of standardized options, **5A:9**  
 Regulated futures contracts, **5A:2**  
 Regulation of security based swaps, **5A:12**  
 Rule 144 availability, **5A:7**  
 Rule 238. Standardized options, below SEC, security based swaps, **5A:13**  
 Section 3(a)(14)  
   Generally, **5A:5**  
 Amendments to Federal Securities Laws, **5A:4**  
 CFMA, **5A:4**  
 Clearing agencies, **5A:11**  
 Eligible resales, **5A:6**  
 Ineligible resales, **5A:7**  
 Nature of security futures product, **5A:6**  
 Nature of seller, **5A:6**  
 Rule 144 availability, **5A:7**  
 Security futures product defined, **5A:5**  
 Settlement by non-affiliate, **5A:7**  
 Transactional exemption, **5A:7**  
 Underwriters, **5A:7**  
 Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC)  
   Jurisdiction over single-stock futures, **5A:2**  
   Regulation of standardized options, **5A:9**  
   Regulatory authority prior to CFMA, **5A:3**  
 Security, **5A:2**  
 Security based swaps  
   Generally, **5A:12 to 5A:14**  
   Cross Border Security Swap Transactions, **5A:13**  
   Regulation, **5A:12**  
   SEC, **5A:13**  
 Settlement by non-affiliate, **5A:7**  
 Settlement of option, **5A:9**  
 Shad-Johnson Accord, **5A:3**  
 Single-stock futures  
   Jurisdiction, **5A:2**  
   Legalization under CFMA, **5A:3**  
   Prohibition, **5A:2**  
 Standardized options  
   Antifraud provisions, **5A:10**

**SECURITY FUTURES PRODUCTS AND STANDARDIZED OPTIONS—Cont'd**

Standardized options—Cont'd  
 Calls and puts, **5A:9**  
 Commodities Futures Modernization Act, **5A:9**  
 Conditions and limitations of Rule 238, **5A:10**  
 Form 10 registration, **5A:9**  
 Form S-1 registration, **5A:9**  
 Form S-20 registration, **5A:9**  
 Joint regulation of derivative securities, **5A:9**  
 National Securities Markets Improvement Act of 1996, **5A:9**  
 Offers and sales under Rule 238, **5A:10**  
 Options Disclosure Document, **5A:9**  
 Rule 238, generally, **5A:8**  
 SEC regulation, **5A:9**  
 Series, **5A:9**  
 Settlement, **5A:9**  
 Transactional exemption under Section 3(a)(14), **5A:6, 5A:7, 5A:10**  
 Underwriters  
   Conditions and limitations of Rule 238, **5A:10**  
   Reliance on Rule 144, **5A:7**

**SECURITY HOLDERS**

Holding companies, **5:8**  
 Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A, **6:64**  
 Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), **2:60 to 2:62**  
**Routine Trading Under Section 4(a)(1) (this index)**

**SEC v. BLINDER ROBINSON & CO.**

Reorganization with court or agency approval under Section 3(a)(10), **3:16**

**SEC v. CHINESE CONSOLIDATED BENEVOLENT ASSOCIATION**

Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:39, 9:52**

**SEC v. RALSTON PURINA CO.**

Generally, **11:13 to 11:25**  
 Appeal and review, **11:23**  
 Court of appeals opinion, **11:23**  
 Disclosure material, **11:19**  
 District court opinion, **11:22**  
 Employees, stock offerings to, **11:16**  
 Evaluation, **11:25**  
 Issuer, **11:15**

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:11, 11:12**

Number of offerees, **11:17**  
 Offering methods, **11:18**  
 Private resales, Section 4 (1 1/2), **9:111, 9:112**  
 Resales, **9:111, 9:112, 11:21**  
 Risks of post-offering resales to nonemployees, **11:21**

**SEC v. RALSTON PURINA CO.—Cont'd**  
Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:111, 9:112**Stock offerings to employees, **11:16**  
Third persons, **11:21**  
U.S. Supreme Court opinion, **11:24****SELLER**Generally, **1:24 to 1:36**  
Accountants as potential sellers, **16:90**  
Affiliates and nonaffiliates  
    Generally, **1:30 to 1:32**  
    Issuer, nonaffiliates of, **1:33 to 1:35**  
    Limited purpose exemptions, **1:31, 1:34**  
Amount of offer, **16:25**  
Arbitration, **16:32, 16:33**  
Attorneys as potential sellers, **16:89**  
Banks, finance companies, and other lenders as  
    potential sellers, **16:91**  
Broker-dealers, **1:36, 16:85**  
Brokers' special exemption, Section 4(a)(4),  
    **13:19**  
Capital raising and other general business  
    transactions, **1:29**  
Cutoff effect, **16:30**  
Directors and officers as potential sellers, **16:87**  
Disclosure, **16:29**  
Evaluation, Pinter v. Dahl, **16:46**  
Federal attitude, **16:21**  
Finance companies as potential sellers, **16:91**  
Funding and related matters, **16:27**  
General partners as potential sellers, **16:88**  
General purpose exemptions  
    Affiliate of user, **1:32**  
    Nonaffiliate of issuer, **1:35**  
Insurance companies as potential sellers, **16:92**  
Issuer  
    Generally, **1:25 to 1:29**  
    Capital raising and other general business  
        transactions, **1:29**  
    Limitations and restrictions, **1:26 to 1:28**  
    Potential sellers, issuer as, **16:86**  
Lenders as potential sellers, **16:91**  
Liable persons, Section 12(a)(1). Violations,  
    below  
Liable persons, Section 12(a)(2). Violations,  
    below  
Limitations and restrictions  
    Affiliate of user, limited purpose exemptions,  
        **1:31**  
    Nonaffiliate of issuer, limited purpose exemptions, **1:34**  
    Securities, limited by, **1:27**  
    Transactions, limited by, **1:26**  
    Type of issuer, limited by, **1:28**  
Lower court opinions, Pinter v. Dahl, **16:44****SELLER—Cont'd**Misleading offers, seller's response to violation,  
    **16:17**  
Motivation, proper, **16:83**  
Offerees, **16:24**  
Offerings, unlawful, **16:16 to 16:18**  
Offerors, **16:23**  
Partnerships, **16:88**  
Pinter v. Dahl, **16:42 to 16:46, 16:80 to 16:83**  
Real estate mortgage securities, Section 4(5),  
    **1:120**  
Registration, **16:28**  
Releases, **16:31**  
Resale of restricted and controlled securities,  
    Rule 144, **10:86, 10:175, 10:202 to 10:205, 10:249**  
Rescission offers  
    Generally, **16:19 to 16:31**  
    Amount of offer, **16:25**  
    Cutoff effect, **16:30**  
    Disclosure, **16:29**  
    Federal attitude, **16:21**  
    Funding and related matters, **16:27**  
    Offerees, **16:24**  
    Offerors, **16:23**  
    Registration, **16:28**  
    Releases, **16:31**  
    State approach, **16:22**  
    Time, **16:26**  
Rodriguez, seller's response to violation, **16:33**  
Section 5, seller's response to violation, **16:18**  
Section 12(a)(1). Violations, below  
Section 12(a)(2). Violations, below  
Securities rating service as potential sellers,  
    **16:93**  
Solicitor, successful, **16:82, 16:83**  
State approach, **16:22**  
Successful solicitor, **16:82, 16:83**  
Summary, transactional exemptions, **1:24**  
Technical seller, **16:81**  
Time, rescission offers, **16:26**  
Transactional exemptions, summary, **1:24**  
Trustees as potential sellers, **16:87**  
Underwriters as potential sellers, **16:84**  
Unlawful offers, **16:16 to 16:18**  
U.S. Supreme Court opinions, Pinter v. Dahl,  
    **16:45**  
Violations  
    Interest of seller, **16:5**  
    Liable persons, Section 12(a)(1)  
        Generally, **16:41 to 16:47**  
        Evaluation, Pinter v. Dahl, **16:46**  
    Lower court opinions, Pinter v. Dahl, **16:44**  
    Pinter v. Dahl, **16:42 to 16:46**  
    U.S. Supreme Court opinions, Pinter v.  
        Dahl, **16:45**

**SELLER—Cont'd**

Violations—Cont'd  
 Liable persons, Section 12(a)(2)  
 Generally, **16:79 to 16:93**  
 Accountants as potential sellers, **16:90**  
 Attorneys as potential sellers, **16:89**  
 Banks, finance companies, and other lenders as potential sellers, **16:91**  
 Broker-dealers as potential sellers, **16:85**  
 Directors and officers as potential sellers, **16:87**  
 General partners as potential sellers, **16:88**  
 Insurance companies as potential sellers, **16:92**  
 Issuers as potential sellers, **16:86**  
 Pinter, **16:80 to 16:83**  
 Potential sellers, generally, **16:84 to 16:93**  
 Proper motivation, **16:83**  
 Securities rating service as potential sellers, **16:93**  
 Successful solicitor, **16:82, 16:83**  
 Technical seller, **16:81**  
 Trustees as potential sellers, **16:87**  
 Underwriters as potential sellers, **16:84**  
 Pinter v. Dahl, **16:42 to 16:46**  
 Response of seller  
 Generally, **16:13 to 16:33**  
 Arbitration, **16:32, 16:33**  
 Misleading offers, **16:17**  
 Rescission offers, above Rodriguez, **16:33**  
 Section 5, violations of, **16:18**  
 Unlawful offers, **16:16 to 16:18**  
 Unlawful sales, **16:15**  
 Section 12(a)(1). Liable persons, Section 12(a)(1), above this group  
 Section 12(a)(2). Liable persons, Section 12(a)(2), above this group

**SERVICE AS CONSIDERATION**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:117**

**SETTLEMENT**

Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), **2:13**  
**Reorganization** (this index)  
 Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:112**  
 Security futures products and standardized options, **5A:7**

**SEVERANCE AGREEMENTS**

Whistleblower program, violations, **16:122**

**SHAD-JOHNSON ACCORD**

Security futures products and standardized options, **5A:3**

**SHIPPING AND MARINE VENTURES**

Intrastate offerings under Section 3(a)(11), **4:29**

**SHORT SALES**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:25, 10:26**  
 Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:107**

**SHORT SWING PROFIT RULE**

Restricted and controlled securities, **10:234.10**  
 Section 16(b), Exchange Act, **10:234.10**

**SHORT-TERM RIGHTS AND WARRANTS**

Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A, **6:40**

**SIGNATURE**

Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A, **6:75**

**SIGNIFICANT MANAGERIAL ASSISTANCE**

Investment Company Act, **7:61**  
 Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:61**

**SIMULTANEOUS FOREIGN OFFERINGS**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:115**

**SIMULTANEOUS PRIMARY AND SECONDARY OFFERINGS**

Intrastate offerings under Section 3(a)(11), **4:9**

**SINGLE BUSINESS ENTERPRISE**

Intrastate offerings under Section 3(a)(11), **4:18 to 4:20**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:112 to 7:114**

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:33**

**SINGLE CERTIFICATE**

Intrastate offerings under Section 3(a)(11), **4:63**

**SINGLE-STOCK FUTURES**

Security futures products and standardized options, **5A:2**

**SIZE OF OFFERINGS**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:301**

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:126 to 11:128**

**SMALL BUSINESS INVESTMENT COMPANIES**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:205**

Section 3(b) and 3(c), **8:39 to 8:42**

**SMALL OFFERINGS**

Rescinded Rule 257, generally, **1:74**

**SMALL TRANSACTIONS EXCLUSION**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities,  
Rule 144, **10:231**

**SOLICITATION**

**Brokers' Special Exemption, Section 4(a)(4)**  
(this index)

Liable persons, Section 12(a)(2), **16:82, 16:83**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D,  
**7:135, 7:161, 7:165**

Limited solicitation, private resales under Rule  
144A, **10A:47.20**

Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation  
A, **6:87**

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:131,**  
**11:131.25, 11:134, 11:156**

Private resales, Rule 144A, **10A:46, 10A:47,**  
**10A:47.10, 10A:47.20**

Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), **2:68**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities,  
Rule 144, **10:223, 10:224**

Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:43**

Section 3(b) and 3(c), **8:13**

Solicitations of interest prior to registration pub-  
lic offering, **11:131.25**

**SOLVENT BUSINESSES**

**Reorganization** (this index)

**SOPHISTICATION**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:16,**  
**7:97**

**Nonpublic Offerings** (this index)

**SOURCE MATERIALS**

Generally, **1:19 to 1:23**

Compliance resources, **1:19**

Interpretative letters, **1:22**

No-action letters, **1:23**

Public availability, history of, **1:21**

**SPECIAL ADMINISTRATIVE  
INTERPRETATIONS**

Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), **2:55 to**  
**2:58**

**SPECIAL COMPUTATION PROVISION**

Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation  
A, **6:22**

**SPECIAL DISCLOSURE**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D,  
**7:131**

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:124**

**SPECIAL ESCROW PROVISION**

Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation  
A, **6:23**

**SPECIAL EXEMPTIONS**

**Brokers' Special Exemption, Section 4(a)(4)**  
(this index)

**SPECIAL FEDERAL LEGISLATION**

Reorganization with court or agency approval  
under Section 3(a)(10), **3:23 to 3:26**

**SPECIAL HOLDING PERIOD**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities,  
Rule 144, **10:61**

**SPECIALIST**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities,  
Rule 144, **10:220**

**SPECIAL OBLIGATION**

Dealers' exemption, Section 4(a)(3), **12:23**

**SPECIAL PURPOSE ACQUISITION  
COMPANY (SPAC)**

Subscription agreement, rule 506, App **7T**

**SPECIAL REGISTRATION PROCEDURE**

State Blue Sky Laws  
Rule 504 transactions, **7:269**  
Rule 505 (former) transactions, **7:278**  
Rule 506 transactions, **7:284**

**SPECIAL RELATIONSHIPS**

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:78 to**  
**11:81**

**SPECIAL REQUIREMENTS**

**Mini-Registration Under Section 3(b), Regulation A** (this index)

**SPECIAL RULES**

**Routine Trading Under Section 4(a)(1)** (this  
index)

**SPECIAL SITUATION**

**Restricted and Controlled Securities** (this  
index)

**SPECIFIC CONDITION**

**Limited Offering Exemptions, Regulation D**  
(this index)

**SPECIFIC REQUIREMENTS**

Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation  
A, **6:74**

**SPIN-OFFS**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities,  
Rule 144, **10:70, 10:72, 10:73**

Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:34 to**  
**9:36**

**STABLECOINS**

Cryptocurrency, **16:127**

**STANDBY AGREEMENT**

Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), **2:19**

**STANDING TO SUE**

Section 12(a)(1), **16:39, 16:40**  
 Section 12(a)(2), **16:75 to 16:78**

**STATE LAW**

Intrastate offerings under Section 3(a)(11), **4:4**  
**Limited Offering Exemptions, Regulation D**  
 (this index)  
 Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), **2:77**  
**Section 3(b) and 3(c)** (this index)

**STOCK AND STOCKHOLDERS**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:173, 7:251**  
 Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:167**  
 Reorganization with court or agency approval under Section 3(a)(10), **3:91, 3:92**  
 Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:36.10, 10:39, 10:144**  
 Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:37**  
 Sample Regulation D stock purchase agreement—corporate parties, **App 7N**  
 Section 3(b) and 3(c), **8:1 to 8:3**

**STOCK DIVIDENDS**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:70, 10:132, 10:133**

**STOCK EXCHANGE**

Brokers' special exemption, Section 4(a)(4), **13:40**  
 Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), **2:38**

**STOCK OFFERINGS**

SEC v. Ralston Purina Co., **11:16**

**STOCK SPLITS**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:70, 10:132, 10:133**  
 Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:37**

**STOP-TRANSFER ORDERS**

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:161**

**STRUCTURED FINANCE PRODUCT**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:100**

**SUBPOENAS**

Administrative sanctions, **16:9**

**SUBSCRIPTION AGREEMENTS**

Intrastate offerings under Section 3(a)(11), **4:57**  
 SPAC, rule 506, **App 7T**

**SUBSIDIARY CORPORATIONS**

**Parent and Subsidiary Corporations** (this index)

**SUBSTANTIAL COMPLIANCE**

Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A, **6:115**

**SUBSTANTIAL INVESTMENT**

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:176**

**SUBSTANTIALLY IDENTICAL SECURITIES**

Private resales, Rule 144A, **10A:22**

**SUBSTANTIVE RELATIONSHIP**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:148, 7:153, 7:154, 7:159**  
 Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:144, 11:149, 11:150, 11:154**

**SUBSTITUTION**

Intrastate offerings under Section 3(a)(11), **4:58 to 4:60**

**SUCCESSFUL SOLICITOR**

Liable persons, Section 12(a)(2), **16:82, 16:83**

**SUCCESSIVE PERIODS**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:184**

**SUPERSEDED RULES**

Generally, **1:39 to 1:135**

**SURRENDER**

Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9)  
 Restricted securities surrendered in exchange, **2:74 to 2:76**  
 Unrestricted securities surrendered in exchange, **2:70 to 2:73**  
 Reorganization with court or agency approval under Section 3(a)(10), **3:94, 3:95**

**SUSPENSION**

**Mini-Registration Under Section 3(b), Regulation A** (this index)  
 Rescinded Regulation B, exemptions, **1:129**  
 Rescinded Regulation F, exemptions, **1:132**

**TACKING**

Rescinded Rule 144(k), two-year holding period, **1:86 to 1:88**

**Restricted and Controlled Securities** (this index)

**TAKEOVERS**

Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), **2:9**

**TAX-EXEMPT ORGANIZATIONS**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:65 to 7:68**  
 Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:89 to 11:92**

**TAX SHELTER**

**Nonpublic Offerings** (this index)

**TECHNICAL SELLER**

Liable persons, Section 12(a)(2), **16:81**

**TELEPHONE SOLICITATION**

Regulation CE, coordinated exemptions for issues of securities exempted under State Law, **8:13**

**TEMPORARY RULES 702 AND 703, 1988-1993**

Employee benefit plans and compensation contracts, Rule 701, eligibility requirements, **8:20**

**TEMPORARY SUSPENSION**

**Mini-Registration Under Section 3(b), Regulation A** (this index)

**TENDER OF SECURITIES**

Section 12(a)(1) violations, **16:51**

Section 12(a)(2) violations, **16:111**

**TEN PERCENT OWNERS**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:46**

**THIRD PERSONS**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:140 to 7:143**

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:137 to 11:139**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:250**

**Restricted and Controlled Securities** (this index)

SEC v. Ralston Purina Co., **11:21**

**THREE-MONTH MEASURING PERIOD**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:177**

**THREE PART EXCEPTIONS**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:69**

**THREE-PARTY MERGER**

Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), **2:34**

**THREE-YEAR LIMITATION**

Limitation of actions, Section 12(a)(2), **16:114**

**TIME**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:42, 7:195**

Material misstatement, Section 12(a)(2), **16:104**

**Mini-Registration Under Section 3(b), Regulation A** (this index)

Rescission offers, **16:26**

**Restricted and Controlled Securities** (this index)

Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:24, 9:94, 9:95**

Section 3(b) and 3(c), **8:25, 8:30**

**TIMING**

**Limited Offering Exemptions, Regulation D**

(this index)

**Nonpublic Offerings** (this index)

**TOLLING**

Equitable tolling, Section 12(a)(1), **16:55**

**TOTAL ASSETS**

Employee benefit plans and compensation contracts, Rule 701, **8:32**

Intrastate offerings under Section 3(a)(11), **4:36**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:67**

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:91**

**TRACING**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:98**

**TRADING**

Private resales, Rule 144A, **10A:15**

Standardized options. See **Security Futures**

**Products and Standardized Options** (this index)

**TRADING VOLUME TEST**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:182, 10:183**

**TRANSACTIONAL EXEMPTION**

Security futures products, Section 3(a)(14) exemption, **5A:6, 5A:7, 5A:10**

Summary, seller, **1:24**

**TRANSACTIONAL ORGANIZATION**

**Nonpublic Offerings** (this index)

**TRANSACTIONAL RESTRICTIONS**

Extraterritorial application of registration requirements, Regulation S, **15A:23, 15A:26 to 15A:29**

**TRANSFER AGENT**

Intrastate offerings under Section 3(a)(11), **4:17**

**TRANSFERS**

Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), **11:161**

Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), **2:35**

**Reorganization** (this index)

**Restricted and Controlled Securities** (this index)

Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:84 to 9:86**

**TRUMP CASINO DECISION**

Violations, Section 12(A)(2), **16:107**

**TRUST INDENTURE ACT**

Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), **2:25**

**TRUSTS AND TRUSTEES**

Intrastate offerings under Section 3(a)(11), **4:15, 4:44, 4:49**

<b>TRUSTS AND TRUSTEES—Cont'd</b>	
Liable persons, Section 12(a)(2), <b>16:87</b>	
Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, <b>7:73, 7:93, 7:94</b>	
Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), <b>11:97</b>	
Real estate mortgage securities, Section 4(5), <b>1:99</b>	
<b>Restricted and Controlled Securities</b> (this index)	
Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), <b>9:4, 9:6 to 9:9, 9:81</b>	
<b>TWO-PARTY MERGER</b>	
Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), <b>2:30, 2:33</b>	
<b>TWO-YEAR HOLDING PERIOD</b>	
Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, <b>10:245 to 10:248</b>	
Rescinded Rule 144(k), <b>1:85 to 1:88</b>	
<b>UNDERLYING SECURITIES</b>	
Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, <b>10:194</b>	
<b>UNDERWRITER</b>	
Brokers' special exemption, Section 4(a)(4), <b>13:6</b>	
Dealers' exemption, Section 4(a)(3), <b>12:9 to 12:12, 12:28</b>	
Intrastate offerings under Section 3(a)(11), <b>4:7, 4:16</b>	
Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A, <b>6:34, 6:77</b>	
Reorganization with court or agency approval under Section 3(a)(10), <b>3:86 to 3:88</b>	
Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, <b>10:29, 10:36.05, 10:59 to 10:61</b>	
<b>Routine Trading Under Section 4(a)(1)</b> (this index)	
<b>Security Futures Products and Standardized Options</b> (this index)	
Seller, Liable persons, Section 12(a)(2), <b>16:84</b>	
<b>UNIFORM LIMITED OFFERING EXEMPTION</b>	
§ D5 million, exemption for limited offers and sales not exceeding, Rule 505 (former), <b>7:217</b>	
<b>UNIFORM NET CAPITAL RULE</b>	
Private resales, Rule 144A, <b>10A:12</b>	
<b>UNITED HOUSING FOUNDATION, INC. v. FORMAN</b>	
Rescinded Rule 235 § 3(b), <b>1:49</b>	
<b>UNITED STATES</b>	
<b>Extraterritorial Application of Registration Requirements, Regulation S</b> (this index)	
<b>UNITED STATES PUBLIC MARKETS</b>	
Private resales, Rule 144A, <b>10A:55</b>	
<b>UNITED STATES SUPREME COURT</b>	
Pinter v. Dahl, Liable persons, Section 12(a)(1), <b>16:45</b>	
SEC v. Ralston Purina Co., <b>11:24</b>	
<b>UNLIMITED RESALES</b>	
Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), <b>9:103, 9:104</b>	
<b>UNREGISTERED SOLICITING ENTITIES</b>	
Public alert, PAUSE, <b>App 1I</b>	
<b>UNRESTRICTED SECURITIES</b>	
Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), <b>2:70 to 2:73</b>	
<b>UNSEASONED OR PROMOTIONAL COMPANIES</b>	
<b>Mini-Registration Under Section 3(b), Regulation A</b> (this index)	
<b>UNTRUTH</b>	
Ignorance of untruth or omission, Section 12(a)(2), <b>16:109, 16:110</b>	
<b>UNUSUAL NONPUBLIC OFFERINGS</b>	
<b>Limited Offering Exemptions, Regulation D</b> (this index)	
<b>UNWORTHY OFFERING DOCTRINE</b>	
<b>Mini-Registration Under Section 3(b), Regulation A</b> (this index)	
<b>USUAL AND CUSTOMARY BROKER'S COMMISSION</b>	
Section 4(a)(4), <b>13:22</b>	
<b>VACATION OF ORDER</b>	
<b>Mini-Registration Under Section 3(b), Regulation A</b> (this index)	
<b>VALUE AND VALUATION</b>	
Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, <b>7:82, 7:193, 7:194</b>	
Private resales, Rule 144A, <b>10A:31</b>	
Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, <b>10:70, 10:71</b>	
<b>VENTURE CAPITAL</b>	
Nonpublic offerings, Section 4(a)(2), <b>11:181</b>	
<b>VIOLATIONS</b>	
Generally, <b>16:1 et seq.</b>	
Administrative sanctions. <b>Sanctions</b> (this index)	
Affirmative defenses	
Section 12(a)(1), <b>16:61 to 16:64</b>	
Section 12(a)(2), <b>16:117 to 16:120</b>	
Allegations, <b>16:110</b>	
Arbitration, <b>16:73</b>	
Attorney's fees, <b>16:60</b>	

**VIOLATIONS—Cont'd**

Bespeaks caution doctrine, **16:106, 16:107**  
 Buyer, refuting buyer's allegation, **16:110**  
 "By means of," **16:97, 16:98**  
 Case law, **16:116**  
 Causation, lack of loss causation, **16:120**  
 Civil liability provisions and theories. Section 12(a)(2), below  
 Confidentiality agreements, whistleblower program, **16:122**  
 Consideration paid, **16:57**  
 Defenses, **16:61 to 16:64, 16:117 to 16:120**  
 Definitions, **16:77, 16:100, 16:103**  
 Deliveries, illegal, **16:38**  
 DOJ revisions, whistleblower program, **16:121**  
 Due care standards, **16:119**  
 Equitable tolling, **16:55**  
 Evidence, proof of compliance or exemption, **16:61**  
 Federal case law, **16:116**  
 General, SEC and DOJ revisions, **16:121**  
 Gustafson v. Alloyd Co. Section 12(a)(2), below  
 Ignorance of untruth or omission, **16:109, 16:110**  
 Interest on money, **16:58**  
 Interests involved, **16:3 to 16:6**  
 Interpretations, **16:64, 16:98**  
 Interstate commerce, **16:48 to 16:50, 16:94 to 16:96**  
 Judicial interpretation, **16:64, 16:98**  
 Jurisdictional connection, **16:50, 16:96**  
 Jurisdictional means, **16:49, 16:95**  
 Knowledge, lack of possible knowledge, **16:118, 16:119**  
 Liable persons. **Seller** (this index)  
 Limitation of actions, **16:52 to 16:55, 16:112 to 16:114**  
**Limited Offering Exemptions, Regulation D** (this index)  
 Loss causation, lack of, **16:120**  
 Mails, use of, **16:48 to 16:50, 16:94 to 16:96**  
 Materiality defined, **16:103**  
 Material misstatement. Section 12(a)(2), below  
 Misstatement. Section 12(a)(2), below  
 No more than three years after public offering, limitation of actions, **16:54**  
 Offerings, **16:37, 16:54**  
 Omission, **16:109, 16:110**  
 One year, limitation of actions, **16:53, 16:113**  
 Oral communications, **16:99, 16:101**  
 In pari delicto, **16:63, 16:64**  
 Parties, **16:40, 16:78**  
 Payment, **16:57**  
 Proper forum, **16:74**  
 Prospectus, **16:99, 16:100**  
 Protection agreements, whistleblower program, **16:122**

**VIOLATIONS—Cont'd**

Public interest, **16:4**  
 Public offering, **16:54**  
 Purchaser, **16:6, 16:40, 16:76, 16:78**  
 Relief available, **16:115, 16:116**  
 Representative for purchaser, plaintiff as, **16:40, 16:78**  
 Rescission, **16:51, 16:111**  
 Restitution to seller, **16:59**  
 Rule 508, **16:62**  
 Safe harbor, **16:108**  
**Sanctions** (this index)  
 SEC and DOJ revisions, whistleblower program, **16:121**  
 Section 5 violations, **16:35 to 16:38**  
 Section 12(a)(1)  
 Generally, **16:34 to 16:64**  
 Affirmative defenses, **16:61 to 16:64**  
 Attorney's fees, **16:60**  
 Consideration paid, **16:57**  
 Deliveries, illegal, **16:38**  
 Equitable tolling, **16:55**  
 Evidence, proof of compliance or exemption, **16:61**  
 Interest on money, **16:58**  
 Interstate commerce, use of, **16:48 to 16:50**  
 Judicial interpretation, **16:64**  
 Jurisdictional connection, **16:50**  
 Jurisdictional means, **16:49**  
 Liable persons. **Seller** (this index)  
 Limitation of actions, **16:52 to 16:55**  
 Mails, use of, **16:48 to 16:50**  
 No more than three years after public offering, limitation of actions, **16:54**  
 Offers, illegal, **16:37**  
 Within one year of violation, limitation of actions, **16:53**  
 In pari delicto, **16:63, 16:64**  
 Relief available, generally, **16:56 to 16:60**  
 Representative for purchaser, plaintiff as, **16:40**  
 Rescission, tender of securities, **16:51**  
 Restitution to seller, **16:59**  
 Rule 508, **16:62**  
 Sales, illegal, **16:36**  
 Section 5 violations, **16:35 to 16:38**  
 Standing to sue, **16:39, 16:40**  
 Tender of securities, **16:51**  
 Section 12(a)(2)  
 Generally, **16:65 to 16:120**  
 Affirmative defenses, **16:117 to 16:120**  
 Arbitration, **16:73**  
 "By means of," **16:97, 16:98**  
 Civil liability provisions and theories, generally, **16:72**  
 Defining purchase, standing to sue, **16:77**

**VIOLATIONS—Cont'd**

Section 12(a)(2)—Cont'd  
 Due care standards, **16:118**  
 Federal case law, **16:116**  
 Gustafson v. Alloyd Co.  
   Generally, **16:67 to 16:71**  
   Dissenting opinion, **16:69**  
   Implications, **16:70**  
   Majority opinion, **16:68**  
   Open questions, **16:71**  
 Ignorance of untruth or omission, **16:109, 16:110**  
 Interstate commerce, **16:94 to 16:96**  
 Judicial interpretation, **16:98**  
 Jurisdictional connection, **16:96**  
 Jurisdictional means, **16:95**  
 Knowledge, lack of possible knowledge, **16:118, 16:119**  
 Liable persons. **Seller** (this index)  
 Limitation of actions, **16:112 to 16:114**  
 Loss causation, lack of, **16:120**  
 Mails, **16:94 to 16:96**  
 Material misstatement  
   Generally, **16:102 to 16:108**  
   Bespeaks caution doctrine, **16:106, 16:107**  
   Facts, **16:105**  
   Materiality defined, **16:103**  
   Statutory safe harbor, **16:108**  
   Time, critical moment in, **16:104**  
 Misstatement. Material misstatement, above this group  
 One-year limitation, limitation of actions, **16:113**  
 Oral communications, **16:99, 16:101**  
 Proper forum, **16:74**  
 Prospectus, **16:99, 16:100**  
 Purchaser, standing to sue, **16:76**  
 Refuting buyer's allegation, **16:110**  
 Relief available, **16:115, 16:116**  
 Representative for purchaser, plaintiff as, standing to sue, **16:78**  
 Safe harbor, **16:108**  
 Standing to sue, **16:75 to 16:78**  
 Tender of securities, rescission, **16:111**  
 Three-year limitation, limitation of actions, **16:114**  
 Trump Casino decision, **16:107**  
**Seller** (this index)  
 Severance agreements, whistleblower program, **16:122**  
 Standing to sue, **16:39, 16:40, 16:75 to 16:78**  
 Statute of repose, **16:114**  
 Tender of securities, **16:51, 16:111**  
 Three-year, limitation of actions, **16:54, 16:114**  
 Time, critical moment in, **16:104**  
 Tolling, equitable, **16:55**

**VIOLATIONS—Cont'd**

Trump Casino decision, **16:107**  
 Untruth, ignorance of, **16:109, 16:110**  
 Whistleblower program  
   Confidentiality, agreements, **16:122**  
   General, SEC and DOJ revisions, **16:121**  
   Protection, agreements, **16:122**  
   Severance, agreements, **16:122**

**VOLUME LIMITATION**

**Restricted and Controlled Securities** (this index)

**VOLUNTARY COMPLIANCE**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:80**

**VOTING TRUSTS**

Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), **2:49**

**WAITING PERIOD**

Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A, **6:80**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:23, 10:81, 10:82, 10:89**

**WAIVER**

Recapitalizations under Section 3(a)(9), **2:53, 2:54**

**WARRANTS**

Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A, **6:40**

Private resales, Rule 144A, **10A:23**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:167.50**

**WEBPAGE TRACKING**

SEC rulemaking, **App 1B**

**WHEAT REPORT**

Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A, **6:18**

Resale of restricted and controlled securities, Rule 144, **10:4, 10:169**

**WHISTLEBLOWER PROGRAM**

Agreements  
   Confidentiality, **16:122**  
   Protection, **16:122**  
   Severance, **16:122**  
 General, SEC and DOJ revisions, **16:121**

**"WITH A VIEW TO"**

Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:23 to 9:26**

**WITHDRAWAL**

Limited offering exemptions, Regulation D, **7:261**  
 Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A, **6:110**

## INDEX

### **WORKING INTERESTS**

Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:11**

### **WRITTEN ACTS AND MATTERS**

Brokers' special exemption, Section 4(a)(4),  
**13:37**

Extraterritorial application of registration requirements, Regulation S, **15A:18**

### **WRITTEN ACTS AND MATTERS—Cont'd**

#### **Limited Offering Exemptions, Regulation D**

(this index)

Mini-registration under Section 3(b), Regulation A, **6:86, 6:91**

#### **Nonpublic Offerings** (this index)

Routine trading under Section 4(a)(1), **9:33**